

BENGWORTH MULTI-ACADEMY TRUST

**DEED OF VARIATION OF FUNDING AGREEMENT
BENGWORTH CE ACADEMY
BRETORTON VILLAGE SCHOOL**

The Parties to this Deed are:

(1) **The Secretary of State for Education** of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT (the "**Secretary of State**");

- and -

(2) **Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust**, a charitable company incorporated in England and Wales with registered company number 08943457 whose registered address is at Bengeworth CE Academy, Kings Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU (the "**Company**").

together referred to as the "**Parties**".

INTRODUCTION

- A. The Secretary of State and Bengeworth CE Academy entered into a Funding Agreement for the purposes of a single academy on 29 May 2014. By a Deed of Variation dated 31 January 2018 this was amended and re-stated in the form of a new agreement comprising a Master Funding Agreement a copy of which is contained in Schedule 1, (the "**Existing MFA**") and a Supplemental Funding Agreement in respect of the **Bengeworth CE Academy** a copy of which is contained in Schedule 2 (the "**Existing Bengeworth CE Academy SFA**");
- B. The Parties have entered into a Supplemental Funding Agreement in respect of the Bretforton Village School on 31 January 2018, a copy of which is contained in Schedule 3 (the "**Existing Bretforton Village School SFA**"); and
- C. The Parties have agreed to amend and re-state the terms of the Existing MFA, the **Existing Bengeworth CE Academy SFA** and the **Existing Bretforton Village School SFA**, on the terms set out in this Deed.

LEGAL AGREEMENT

1. Words, expressions and interpretations used in this Deed shall, unless the context expressly requires otherwise, have the meaning given to them in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, the Amended Master Funding Agreement (as defined in clause 2 below).
2. The Secretary of State and the Company agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the Existing MFA shall be amended and re-stated in the form of the Master Funding Agreement set out in Schedule 4 (the "**Amended Master Funding Agreement**"). For the avoidance of doubt, the Amended Master Funding Agreement does not terminate or suspend the Existing MFA but further amends and re-states it.
3. The Secretary of State and the Company agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the **Existing Bengeworth CE Academy SFA** shall be amended and re-stated in the form of the Amended Bengeworth CE Academy SFA set out in Schedule 5 (the "**Amended Bengeworth CE Academy SFA**"). For the avoidance of doubt, the **Amended Bengeworth CE Academy SFA** does not terminate or suspend the **Existing Bengeworth CE Academy SFA** but further amends and re-states it.

- The Secretary of State and the Company agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the **Existing Bretforton Village School SFA** shall be amended and re-stated in the form of the Amended Bretforton Village School SFA set out in Schedule 6 (the "**Amended Bretforton Village School SFA**"). For the avoidance of doubt, the **Amended Bretforton Village School SFA** does not terminate or suspend the **Existing Bretforton Village School SFA** but amends and re-states it.

GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION

- This Deed, and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it, its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the law of England and Wales.
- The Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out of, or in connection with, this deed or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

COUNTERPARTS

- This Deed may be executed in any number of counterparts and by the parties to it on separate counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be an original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute one and the same instrument.

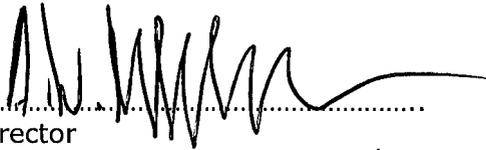
IN WITNESS whereof this Deed has been executed by the parties hereto and is intended to be and is hereby delivered on the last date listed below.

EXECUTED as a deed by affixing the corporate)
seal of the **Secretary of State for Education**)
authenticated by:-)


..... MR. P. JUDGE
Duly authorised by the Secretary of State for Education
Date.....15 November 2021

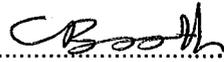


EXECUTED as a deed by
**Bengeworth Multi-Academy
Trust** acting by:


.....
Director

Print name..... A.W. Martin-Lewis

Date

Witnessed by 
.....
Signature

Full name..... MRS. CHRISTINE BOOTH

Address..... c/o Bengeworth Academy
Kings Road, Evesham WR11 3ED

Occupation..... MAT. BUSINESS MANAGER

Schedule 1

Existing MFA

BENGEWORTH CE ACADEMY

DEED OF VARIATION OF FUNDING AGREEMENT

Schedule 2

Existing Bengeworth CE Academy SFA

The Parties to this Deed are:

(1) **The Secretary of State for Education** of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT (the "**Secretary of State**");

- and -

(2) **Bengeworth CE Academy**, a charitable company incorporated in England and Wales with registered company number 08943457 whose registered address is at King's Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU ("the **Company**").

together referred to as the "**Parties**".

INTRODUCTION

- A. The Parties entered into a Funding Agreement for the purposes of a single academy on 29 May 2014, a copy of which is contained in Schedule A, (the "**Existing FA**").
- B. The Company now intends to run more than one academy.
- C. The Parties have, therefore, agreed to amend and re-state the terms of the Existing FA, in accordance with the terms of this Deed to form a multi-academy trust.

LEGAL AGREEMENT

- 1. Words, expressions and interpretations used in this Deed shall, unless the context expressly requires otherwise, have the meaning given to them in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with the Master Funding Agreement (as defined in clause 2 below).
- 2. The Parties agree that with effect from the date of this Deed, the Existing FA shall be amended and re-stated in the form of a new agreement which shall consist of the terms of the Master Funding Agreement contained in Schedule B (the "**Master Funding Agreement**") and separating other provisions into a corresponding Supplemental Funding Agreement contained in Schedule C (the "**Supplemental Funding Agreement**").

GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION

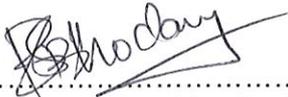
- 3. This Deed, and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it, its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the law of England and Wales.
- 4. The Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out of, or in connection with, this deed or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

COUNTERPARTS

5. This Deed may be executed in any number of counterparts and by the parties to it on separate counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be an original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute one and the same instrument.

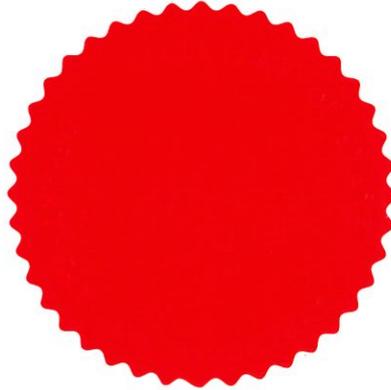
IN WITNESS whereof this Deed has been executed by the parties hereto and is intended to be and is hereby delivered on the last date listed below.

EXECUTED as a deed by affixing the corporate seal of the **Secretary of State for Education** authenticated by:-)
)
)



.....
Duly authorised by the Secretary of State for Education

Date 31/1/2018



EXECUTED as a deed by **BENGWORTH CE ACADEMY** acting by:



.....
Director

Witness signature: 

Witness name: **MRS CHRISTINE BOOTH**

Witness address: **Lidfield House**
11 Robinia Close
Evesham
Worce WR11 2EZ

Date

Schedule A
Existing FA

**SINGLE ACADEMY MODEL
Mainstream**

BENGEWORTH CE ACADEMY

FUNDING AGREEMENT

**SINGLE ACADEMY MODEL
Mainstream**

**BENGEWORTH CE ACADEMY
FUNDING AGREEMENT**

CONTENTS:

SECTION	CLAUSE NO
INTRODUCTION	1 – 8
LEGAL AGREEMENT	9
ACADEMY REQUIREMENTS	10
ACADEMY OPENING DATE	11
CONDITIONS OF GRANT	
General	12
Governance	13 – 14
Conduct	15
Disclosure and Barring Service Checks	16
Pupils	17
Designated Teacher for Looked After Children	17A
Teachers and other staff	18 – 21
Curriculum, curriculum development and delivery and RE and collective worship	22-28A
Assessment	29
Exclusions Agreement	30
School meals	31 – 32
Charging	33
International Education Surveys	33A
Pupil Premium	33B
DURATION OF SCHOOL DAY AND YEAR	33C
GRANTS TO BE PAID BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE	
General	34 – 35
Capital Grant	36 – 39
Arrangements for Payment of Capital Grant	40
General Annual Grant (GAG)	41 – 53
Earmarked Annual Grant (EAG)	54 – 55
Arrangements for payment of GAG and EAG	56 – 60

Other relevant funding	61 – 64
FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS	
General	65 – 79A
Borrowing Powers	80 – 81
Disposal of Assets	82 – 88
TERMINATION	
General	89
Termination Warning Notice	90 – 93
Notice of Intention to Terminate	94 – 96
Termination with Immediate Effect	97 - 99
Change of Control	100 - 102
Effect of Termination	103 – 110
GENERAL	
Information	111 – 112
Access by Secretary of State’s Officers	113 – 115
Notices	116 – 117
Complaints	117A – 117D
General	118 – 124
ANNEXES TO AGREEMENT	
Memorandum and Articles of the Academy Trust	Annex A
Admissions Requirements	Annex B
Arrangements for pupils with SEN and disabilities at the Academy	Annex C

INTRODUCTION

1) This Agreement is made under section 1 of the Academies Act 2010 between the Secretary of State for Education ("the Secretary of State") and Bengeworth CE Academy (the "Academy Trust").

2) The Academy Trust is a Company incorporated in England and Wales, limited by guarantee with registered Company number 8943457.

3) The following expressions used in this Agreement have the respective meanings assigned to them by the numbered clauses of this Agreement referred to immediately after the reference to the expressions -

a) "Academies Financial Handbook" - clause 66;

b) "Accounting Officer" – clause 65;

c) "Annual Letter of Funding" - clause 59;

d) "GAG" – clause 35;

e) "Capital Expenditure" - clause 36;

f) "Capital Grant" – clause 36;

g) "EAG" - clause 35;

h) "Governing Body" – clause 13

i) "Recurrent Expenditure" – clause 35;

j) "Start-up Period" – clause 49;

4) In this Agreement the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:-

"Academy" means an Academy school (within the meaning of the Academies Act 2010);

"Academy Financial Year" means the year from 1st September to 31st August

or such other period as the Secretary of State may from time to time specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust;

the "Articles" means the Articles of Association of the Academy Trust for the time being in force;

"Business Day" means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a day which is a bank holiday with the meaning given to that expression in the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971;

"Chief Inspector" means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;

"Control" in relation to a body corporate ('Entity') means either the legal or beneficial ownership of 30 per cent or more of the issued shares in the Entity ordinarily having voting rights or the power of a person ('A') otherwise to secure –

(a) either by means of the holding of shares in that Entity or having an interest conferring voting rights at general meetings of the membership of the Entity or of any other body corporate;

(b) by virtue of any powers conferred by the Articles or other document regulating that Entity or any other Entity or partnership including, without limitation, the power to appoint or remove a majority of the governing body thereof, or

(c) by virtue of any agreement, understanding or arrangement between any person or persons,

that the affairs of the first-mentioned Entity are conducted in accordance with the wishes of A and 'Controls' shall be construed accordingly;

"DfE" means the Department for Education and any successor;

"LA" means the Local Authority in the area in which the Academy is situated;

"the Land" means the publicly funded land (including for the avoidance of doubt all buildings, structures landscaping and other erections) situated at

Bengeworth CE Academy, Kings Road, Evesham, WR11 3EU and registered under title numbers WR99174 and WR131155;

“Memorandum” means the memorandum of association of the Academy Trust, for the time being in force;

“parents” means parents or guardians;

“persons” includes a body of persons, corporate or incorporate;

“Principal” means the head teacher of the Academy;

“Principal Regulator” means body or person appointed as the Principal Regulator under the Charities Act 2011;

references to “school” shall where the context so admits be references to the Academy;

“SEN” means Special Educational Needs; and

“SENCO” means Special Educational Needs Co-ordinator.

5) The Interpretation Act 1978 shall apply for the interpretation of this Agreement as it applies for the interpretation of an Act of Parliament.

6) Expressions defined in this Agreement shall have the same meaning where used in any Annex to this Agreement.

7) Questions arising on the interpretation of the arrangements in this Agreement shall be resolved by the Secretary of State after consultation with the Academy Trust.

8) Section 1 (3) of the Academies Act 2010 states that:

(3) An Academy agreement is an agreement between the Secretary of State and the other party under which-

(a) the other party gives the undertakings in subsection (5), and

- (b) the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to the other party in consideration of those undertakings.

LEGAL AGREEMENT

9) In consideration of the Academy Trust undertaking to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of, an independent school in England to be known as Bengeworth CE Academy ("the Academy") and meeting such requirements as are referred to in clause 10, the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to the Academy Trust in accordance with the conditions and requirements set out in this Agreement. For the avoidance of doubt, any obligations imposed upon or powers given to the Academy by this Agreement are also imposed upon the Academy Trust.

ACADEMY REQUIREMENTS

10) The Academy requirements are those set down in Section 1A of the Academies Act 2010.

ACADEMY OPENING DATE

11) The Academy shall open as a school on 1 April 2014 replacing Bengeworth First School which shall cease to be maintained by the Local Authority on that date, which date shall be the conversion date within the meaning of the Academies Act 2010.

CONDITIONS OF GRANT

General

- 12) Other conditions and requirements in respect of the Academy are that:
- (a) the school will be at the heart of its community, promoting community cohesion and sharing facilities with other schools and the wider community;
 - (b) there will be assessments of pupils' performance as they apply to maintained schools and the opportunity to study for qualifications in accordance with clause 29 (d);

- (c) the admissions policy and arrangements for the school will be in accordance with admissions law, and the DfE Codes of Practice, as they apply to maintained schools;
- (d) teachers' levels of pay and conditions of service will be the responsibility of the Academy Trust;
- (e) there will be an emphasis on the needs of the individual pupils including pupils with special educational needs (SEN), both those with and without statements of SEN;
- (f) there will be no charge in respect of admission to the school and the school will only charge pupils where the law allows maintained schools to charge; and
- (g) the Academy Trust shall as soon as reasonably practicable establish an appropriate mechanism for the receipt and management of donations and shall use reasonable endeavours to procure donations through that mechanism for the purpose of the objects specified in the Articles.

Governance

- 13) The Academy will be governed by a governing body ("the Governing Body") who are the Directors of the company constituted under the Articles of the Academy Trust.
- 14) The Governing Body shall have regard to (but for the avoidance of doubt shall not be bound by) any guidance as to the governance of Academy Trusts that the Secretary of State may publish.

Conduct

- 15) The Academy Trust will conduct the Academy in accordance with:
 - a) the Articles;
 - b) all provisions by or under statute which confer rights or impose obligations on Academies including, without limitation, the independent schools standards prescribed under section 157 of the Education Act 2002 to the extent they apply to the Academy;
 - c) the terms of this Agreement.

Disclosure and Barring Service Checks

16) The Academy Trust shall comply with the requirements of the Education (Independent School Standards) (England) Regulations 2010 (or such other regulations as may for the time being be applicable) in relation to requiring enhanced criminal records checks, obtaining enhanced criminal records certificates and making any further checks, as required and appropriate for members of staff, supply staff, individual Governors and the Chair of the Governing Body.

16A) The Academy Trust shall, on receipt of a copy of an enhanced criminal record certificate, on request from the Secretary of State or his agents, as soon as possible thereafter submit information contained in the certificate to the Secretary of State in accordance with section 124 of the Police Act 1997.

Pupils

17) The planned capacity of the Academy is 402 in the age range 4-10. The Academy will be an all ability inclusive school whose requirements for:

- a) the admission of pupils to the Academy are set out in Annex B to this Agreement;
- b) the admission to the Academy of and support for pupils with SEN and with disabilities (for pupils who have and who do not have statements of SEN) are set out in Annex C to this Agreement;
- c) pupil exclusions are set out in regulations made by virtue of section 51A of the Education Act 2002 (as may be amended from time to time, and includes any successor provisions).

Designated Teacher for Looked After Children

17A) The Academy Trust will, in respect of the Academy, act in accordance with, and be bound by, all relevant statutory and regulatory provisions and have regard to any guidance and codes of practice issued pursuant to such provisions, as they apply at any time to a maintained school, relating to the designation of a person to manage the teaching and learning programme for children who are looked after by an LA and are registered pupils at the school. For the purpose of this clause, any reference to

the governing body of a maintained school in such statutory and regulatory provisions, or in any guidance and code of practice issued pursuant to such provisions, shall be deemed to be references to the Governing Body of the Academy Trust.

Teachers and other staff

18) Subject to clause 19, the Academy Trust shall, in accordance with any guidance which the Secretary of State may issue on the qualifications of teaching and other staff in Academies, employ anyone it deems is suitably qualified or is otherwise eligible under a contract of employment or for services to carry out planning and preparing lessons and courses for pupils, delivering lessons to pupils, assessing the development, progress and attainment of pupils, and reporting on the development, progress and attainment of pupils.

19) Clause 18 does not apply to anyone who:

- a) is appointed as the SENCO by the Academy Trust under section 317(3A) of the Education Act 1996, who must meet the requirements set out in Regulation 3 of the Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) Regulations 2008 (SI 2008/2945); or
- b) is appointed as a designated teacher for looked after children further to clause 17A.

20) The Academy Trust shall ensure that all teachers employed at the Academy have access to the Teachers' Pension Scheme and, in so doing, will comply with the statutory provisions underlying the scheme.

21) The Academy Trust shall ensure that all employees at the Academy other than teachers have access to the Local Government Pension Scheme in accordance with the Local Government Pension Scheme (Administration) Regulations 2008 [SI 2008/239] (or such other regulations as may for the time being be applicable).

21A) Where a teacher employed at the Academy applies for a teaching post at another Academy, 16 to 19 Academy, Alternative Provision Academy, maintained school, school maintained by a local authority or institution within the further

education sector, the Academy Trust must at the request of the governing body or Academy Trust of that other educational institution:

- a) advise in writing whether or not, in the preceding two years, there has been any formal consideration of that teacher's capability to perform their role at the Academy, or the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 11 above); and
- b) provide written details of the concerns which gave rise to any such consideration of that teacher's capability, the duration of the proceedings and their outcome.

21B) The Academy Trust shall in relation to:

- (a) any person who may apply for a position as an employee or to be otherwise engaged by the Academy Trust, and
- (b) any employee with whom the Academy Trust enters into a contract of employment or a contract for services

act in accordance with and hereby agrees to be bound by sub-sections 58(2), (3), (5), (6) & (9) and sections 59 to 60 of the Schools Standards and Framework Act 1998 ("SSFA") as modified below, so far as those provisions apply to, and as if the Academy Trust were, a voluntarily controlled or foundation school designated by an order under section 69(3) of the SSFA as a school having a religious character. For the avoidance of doubt, the Academy Trust agrees and acknowledges that section 124A of the SSFA shall not therefore apply to it in relation the persons referred to at (a) and (b) above.

21C) (1) Section 58 of the SSFA shall apply to the Academy Trust with the following modifications:

- a) in subsection (3) for the words "head teacher" read "principal";
- b) in subsections (5) & (6) for "foundation governors" read "Foundation Governors" as defined in the Articles;
- c) in subsection (6):(b) for the words "governing body" read "appropriate body";

d) in subsection (9) for (a) and (b) read the words "Academy Trust".-

(2) Section 60(4) of the SSFA shall apply to the Academy Trust with the modification that for the words "head teacher" read "principal" each time they occur.

Curriculum, curriculum development and delivery and RE and collective worship

22) The curriculum provided by the Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 shall be broad and balanced.

22A) The Academy Trust shall publish information in relation to its current curriculum provision. Such information shall include details relating to:

- a) the content of the curriculum;
- b) its approach to the curriculum;
- c) the GCSE options (and other Key Stage 4 qualifications) or other future qualifications, as specified by the Secretary of State, offered by the Academy;
- d) the names of any phonics or reading schemes in operation for Key Stage 1; and
- e) how parents (including prospective parents) can obtain further information in relation to the Academy's curriculum.

22B) Subject to the requirements of clauses 22, 22A and 23 to 28A, the curriculum will be the responsibility of the Academy Trust.

23) The Academy Trust shall ensure that the broad and balanced curriculum includes English, mathematics and science.

23A) Sections 42A (provision of careers guidance) and 45A (guidance as to discharge of duties) of the Education Act 1997 shall be deemed to apply to the

Academy with the following modifications:

- a) the Academy shall be treated as falling within the meaning of "a school" under section 42A (2);
- b) the Academy Trust shall be deemed to be the "responsible authorities" for the purposes of subsection 42A(3); and
- c) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at the Academy.

24) The Academy Trust shall make provision for the teaching of religious education and for a daily act of collective worship at the Academy.

25) Not used.

26) The requirements for religious education and collective worship are as follows:

- a) subject to clause 27 and paragraph 3 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 which shall apply as if the Academy were a foundation school or voluntary controlled school with a religious character, the Academy Trust shall ensure that provision shall be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996;
- b) subject to clause 27, the Academy Trust shall comply with the requirements of section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a foundation school or voluntary controlled school with a religious character, and as if references to 'the required collective worship' were references to collective worship in accordance with the tenets and practices of the specified religion or religious denomination of the Academy;
- c) the Academy Trust shall ensure that the quality of the Academy's collective worship given in accordance with the tenets and practice of the specific religion or religious denomination is inspected. Such inspection shall

be conducted by a person chosen by the Academy Trust and the Academy shall secure that such inspection shall comply with the requirements set out in any statutory provision and regulations as if the Academy were a foundation or voluntary controlled school which has been designated under section 69(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as having a religious character.

26A) Where the Academy is listed in the Register of Independent Schools as having a religious ethos, but has not been designated with a religious character in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to Section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010, the Academy Trust agrees that paragraph 5(b) of Schedule 11 of the Equality Act 2010 shall not apply to the Academy.

27) Section 71(1) – (6) and (8) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 shall apply as if the Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if references to “Religious Education” and to “Religious Worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with clauses 25 or 26 as appropriate.

28) The Academy Trust shall have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State, further to section 403 of the Education Act 1996, on sex and relationship education to ensure that children at the Academy are protected from inappropriate teaching materials and they learn the nature of marriage and its importance for family life and for bringing up children. The Academy Trust shall also have regard to the requirements set out in section 405 of the Education Act 1996 which shall apply to the Academy as if it were a maintained school.

28A) The Academy Trust agrees to act in accordance with Sections 406 (Political Indoctrination) and 407 (Duty to secure balanced treatment of political issues) of the Education Act 1996 as if it were a maintained school, subject to the following modifications:

- a) references to any maintained school shall be treated as references to the Academy;

- b) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at the Academy;
- c) references to the governing body or the local authority shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Academy Trust; and
- d) references to the head teacher shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Principal of the Academy.

Assessment

29) The Secretary of State will notify the appropriate body for assessment purposes about the Academy.

- a) The Academy Trust shall ensure that the Academy complies with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time to ensure that pupils take part in assessments and in teacher assessments of pupils' performance as they apply to maintained schools.
- b) The Academy Trust shall report to any body on assessments under clause 29 as the Secretary of State shall require and shall provide such information as may be required by that body as applies to maintained schools.
- c) In respect of all Key Stages, the Academy Trust will submit the Academy to monitoring and moderation of its assessment arrangements as required by the Secretary of State.
- d) In relation to courses of education or training at the Academy which are funded from its GAG, the Academy Trust may offer:-
 - (i) any course of education or training which leads to a qualification that is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 96 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000, and
 - (ii) any course of education or training not falling within paragraph (i) if the Secretary of State gives his specific written approval for it.

29A) The Academy Trust shall ensure that the following information is published on

the Academy's website:

- a) If applicable, the school's most recent Key Stage 2 results as published by the Secretary of State under the following column headings in the School Performance Tables published on the Department for Education's website:
 - (i) "% achieving Level 4 or above in English and maths";
 - (ii) "% making expected progress";
 - (iii) in relation to English, "% achieving Level 5 or above"; and
 - (iv) in relation to maths, "% achieving Level 5 or above".
- b) Information as to where and by what means parents (including prospective parents) may access the most recent report about the school published by the Chief Inspector.
- c) Information as to where and by what means parents (including prospective parents) may access the School Performance Tables published by the Secretary of State on the Department for Education's website.

Exclusions Agreement

- 30) The Academy Trust shall, if invited to do so by an LA, enter into an agreement in respect of the Academy with that LA, which has the effect that where:
 - a) the Academy Trust admits a pupil to the Academy who has been permanently excluded from a maintained school, the Academy itself or another Academy with whom the LA has a similar agreement; or
 - b) the Academy Trust permanently excludes a pupil from the Academy

payment will flow between the Academy Trust and the LA in the same direction and for the same amount that it would, were the Academy a maintained school, under Regulations made under section 47 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 relating to the addition or deduction of a maintained school's budget following a permanent exclusion or the admission of a permanently excluded pupil. At the date of this Agreement, the applicable Regulation is Regulation 23 of the School

School Meals

31) The Academy Trust shall, if requested to do so by or on behalf of any pupils at the Academy, provide school lunches for those pupils unless it would be unreasonable for it to do so. Subject to the provisions of clause 32, charges may be levied for lunches, but the Academy Trust shall otherwise fund the cost of such school lunches from its GAG.

32) In relation to a pupil who is himself or whose parents are in receipt of benefits mentioned in section 512ZB of the Education Act 1996 (or equivalent provision governing the entitlement to free school lunches of pupils at maintained schools), the Academy Trust shall ensure that a school lunch is provided for such a pupil free of charge to be funded by the Academy Trust.

Charging

33) Sections 402 (obligation to enter pupils for public examinations), 450 - 457 (charges), 459 (regulations about information about charges and school hours), 460 (voluntary contributions), 461 (recovery of sums as civil debt) and 462 (interpretation re charges) of the Education Act 1996 (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any secondary legislation made further to those provisions) shall be deemed to apply to the Academy with the following modifications:

- a) references to any maintained school shall be treated as references to the Academy;
- b) references to registered pupils shall be treated as references to registered pupils at the Academy;
- c) references to the governing body or the local authority shall, in each case, be treated as references to the Academy Trust; and
- d) the Academy Trust may charge persons who are not registered pupils at the Academy for education provided or for facilities used by them at the Academy.

International Education Surveys

33A) Section 538A of the Education Act 1996 (power to direct participation in

international surveys) shall be deemed to apply to the Academy with the following modifications:

(a) references to the governing body shall be treated as references to the Academy Trust; and

(b) references to community, foundation or voluntary school shall be treated as references to the Academy.

Pupil Premium

33B) The Academy Trust shall publish in each Academy Financial Year information in relation to:

- a) the amount of Pupil Premium allocation that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
- b) on what it intends to spend the Pupil Premium allocation;
- c) on what it spent its Pupil Premium in the previous Academy Financial Year;
- d) the impact in educational attainment, arising from expenditure of the previous Academy Financial Year's Pupil Premium.

DURATION OF SCHOOL DAY AND YEAR

33C) The duration of the school day and year will be the responsibility of the Academy Trust.

GRANTS TO BE PAID BY THE SECRETARY OF STATE

General

34) The Secretary of State shall pay grants towards Recurrent Expenditure and may pay grants towards Capital Expenditure for the Academy. Except with the Secretary of State's prior agreement, the Academy Trust shall not budget for its expenditure in any Academy Financial Year in excess of expected income (subject to clause 79). The Academy Trust shall not enter into commitments which are likely to have substantial implications for future levels of grant, or for the period for which grant may be required. No decision by the Academy Trust shall commit the Secretary of State to paying any particular amount of grant.

35) "Recurrent Expenditure" means any expenditure on the establishment, conduct, administration and maintenance of the Academy which does not fall within the categories of capital expenditure set out at clause 36. The Secretary of State shall pay two separate and distinct grants in respect of Recurrent Expenditure: General Annual Grant ("GAG") and Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG").

Capital Grant

36) "Capital Expenditure" means expenditure on:

- a) the acquisition of land and buildings;
- b) the erection, enlargement, improvement or demolition of any building including fixed plant, installation, wall, fence or other structure, or any playground or hard standing;
- c) the installation of electrical, mechanical or other services other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- d) the purchase of vehicles and other self-propelled mechanical equipment;
- e) the installation and equipping of premises with furnishings and equipment, other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- f) the installation and equipping of premises with computers, networking for computers, operating software and information and communication technology equipment, other than necessary updates or necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- g) the provision and equipping of premises, including playing fields and other facilities for social activities and physical recreation other than necessary replacements, repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- h) works of a permanent character other than the purchase or replacement of minor day-to-day items;
- i) any major repairs or replacements which are specified as constituting capital expenditure in any grant letter relating to them;
- j) such other items (whether of a like or dissimilar nature to any of the foregoing) of a substantial or enduring nature as the Secretary of State may agree shall constitute capital expenditure for the purposes of this Agreement;

- k) all professional fees properly and reasonably incurred in connection with the provision of any of the above;
- l) VAT and other taxes payable on any of the above.

“Capital Grant” means grant paid to the Academy Trust in respect of Capital Expenditure.

37) Where the Academy is to open in new premises, or where existing premises are to be substantially refurbished or remodelled to enable the Academy to open in such premises, the Secretary of State, may, in his absolute discretion be responsible for meeting the incurred Capital Expenditure for that Academy. To that end, the Secretary of State will consider providing funding in accordance with any arrangements as he considers appropriate.

38) Any Capital Expenditure incurred in respect of the Academy on which Capital Grant payments are sought from the Secretary of State will require the specific prior written agreement of the Secretary of State, which agreement shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

39) Any payment of Capital Grant to the Academy Trust under this Agreement is subject to the fulfilment of the following conditions:

- a) such grants are used solely to defray expenditure approved by the Secretary of State;
- b) the Academy Trust certifying and providing evidence that all planning and other consents necessary for the development and all related infrastructure to be completed have been obtained or put in place;
- c) any other conditions that the Secretary of State may specify.

Arrangements for Payment of Capital Grant

40) Capital Grant will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust on the basis of claims for grant submitted to the Secretary of State in the notified format with supporting invoices and certificates as required by the Secretary of State. If a dispute arises as to whether a claim is or is not acceptable both parties

undertake to attempt to resolve it in good faith. In the event of such a dispute, the Secretary of State shall pay to the Academy Trust so much of the claim as shall not be in dispute.

General Annual Grant

41) GAG will be paid by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust in order to cover the normal running costs of the Academy. These will include, but are not limited to:

- a) teachers' salaries and related costs (including full and part time teaching staff and seconded teachers);
- b) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, educational support staff, administrative and clerical staff and manual and premises related staff);
- c) employees' expenses;
- d) the purchase, maintenance, repair and replacement:
 - (i) of teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books, stationery and ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
 - (ii) of other supplies and services;
- e) examination fees;
- f) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewage; fuel and light (including fuel oil, solid and other fuel, electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- g) insurance;
- h) medical equipment and supplies;
- i) staff development (including in-service training);
- j) curriculum development;
- k) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school meals to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and

discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with special educational needs or disabilities (taking account of the fact that separate additional money will be available for pupils with statements of special educational needs);

- l) administration; and
- m) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.

42) Subject to clauses to 50-51, GAG for each Academy Financial Year for the Academy will include:

- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and notified in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent, taking account of the number of pupils at the Academy;
- b) funding in respect of functions which would be carried out by the LA if the Academy were a maintained school.

43) The GAG for each Academy Financial Year for the Academy will also include, payable on a basis equivalent to that applied to maintained schools:

- a) funding for matters for which it is necessary for the Academy to incur extra costs, for as long as those costs are deemed necessary by the Secretary of State; and
- b) payments in respect of further, specific grants made available to maintained schools, where the Academy meets the requisite conditions and criteria necessary for a maintained school to receive these grants, such payments to be at the discretion of the Secretary of State.

44) Subject to clause 46, the basis of the pupil number count for the purposes of determining GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens shall be the same basis as that used by the Local Authority for determining the budget share of the predecessor maintained school as adjusted by numbers counted in any subsequent Schools Census, as determined by the Secretary of State.

45) Subject to clause 46, the basis of the pupil number count for the purpose of determining GAG for the Academy for Academy Financial Years after the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens will be:

- a) for the pupil number count for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
- b) for the pupil number count for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which for the time being is in use for maintained schools for the calculation of pupil numbers for pupils in Year 12 and above for the purpose of calculating their level of funding.

46) Where either of the following conditions applies in respect of an Academy Financial Year, the basis of the pupil count shall be determined by the Secretary of State, taking account of any diseconomies of scale that the Academy will be under as a result of such condition(s) applying. The conditions are:

- a) not all planned Year-groups will be present at the Academy (that is, not all the pupil cohorts relevant to the age-range of the Academy will have some pupils present); or
- b) the total number of pupils as measured in the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question is less than 90% of the planned final size of the Academy, which is 402, and has not at any previous time been 90% or more of that number.

47) For any Academy Financial Year in which GAG for the Academy has been calculated in accordance with clause 44, no adjustment shall be made to the following Academy Financial Year's formula funding element of GAG to recognise variation from the pupil count basis used.

48) For any Academy Financial Year in which GAG for the Academy is calculated in accordance with clause 45, no adjustment will be made to the formula funding element in the following Academy Financial Year's formula funding element of GAG unless the Academy Trust demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State

that there has been a significant impact on balances. For any other element of GAG the Secretary of State may make adjustments to recognise a variation in pupil numbers from that used to calculate the element of grant in question; the basis of these will be set out in the annual letter of funding.

49) The Secretary of State recognises that:

- a) Where the Academy opens with an intake representing only a proportion of the final planned size of the Academy, payments based simply upon the number of pupils present are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs in the Academy Financial Years before all age groups are present at their planned size (the "Start-up Period") because of a lack of economies of scale. The Secretary of State may pay an appropriately larger GAG in the Start-up Period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 42-48, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively;
- b) Where the Academy opens with pupils transferred from one or more maintained schools which have closed, additional GAG resources may be required to take account of transitional costs including any costs associated with supporting the integration of pupils from the closed schools and, where necessary, to offer a dual curriculum. If the Secretary of State has indicated that such additional GAG will be payable, the Academy Trust will make a bid for this addition to GAG based upon need and providing appropriate supporting evidence.

50) During the Start-up Period or during the period when year groups are present who have transferred from a predecessor school or schools, the Secretary of State will pay a further element of GAG additional to that calculated in accordance with the methods set out in clauses 42-48 to allow the Academy to:

- a) purchase a basic stock of teaching and learning materials (including library books, text books, software, stationery, science equipment and equipment for physical education) and other consumable materials;
- b) meet the costs associated with the recruitment and induction of additional teaching and other staff.

After the Start-up Period these costs will be met through the ordinary GAG.

51) The Secretary of State recognises that if he serves notice of intention to terminate this Agreement, the intake of new pupils during the notice period is likely to decline and that in such circumstances payments based simply upon the number of pupils attending the Academy are unlikely to be sufficient to meet the Academy's needs during the notice period. The Secretary of State may undertake to pay a reasonable and appropriately larger GAG with respect to the Academy in the notice period than would be justified solely on the basis of the methods set out in clauses 42-48, in order to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

52) The Secretary of State also recognises that if this Agreement is terminated for any reason by either party the number of pupils at the Academy is likely to decline. In these circumstances both parties undertake to attempt to resolve issues arising from such termination in good faith and with the aim of protecting the interests and the education of the pupils at the Academy.

53) GAG paid by the Secretary of State shall only be spent by the Academy Trust towards the normal running costs of the Academy.

Earmarked Annual Grant

54) Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG") may be paid by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust in respect of either Recurrent Expenditure or Capital Expenditure for such specific purposes as may from time to time be agreed between the Secretary of State and the Academy Trust and as described in the relevant funding letter. The Academy Trust shall only spend EAG in accordance with the scope, terms and conditions of the grant set out in the relevant funding letter.

55) Where the Academy Trust is seeking a specific EAG in relation to any Academy Financial Year, it shall submit a letter outlining its proposals and the reasons for its request to the DfE.

Arrangements for Payment of GAG and EAG

56) The Secretary of State shall notify the Academy Trust at a date preceding the start of each Academy Financial Year of the GAG and EAG figures in respect of the

Academy which, subject to Parliamentary approval, the Secretary of State plans for that Academy Financial Year and of the assumptions and figures on which these are based.

57) If GAG or EAG is calculated incorrectly due to a mistake of the Secretary of State then:

- a) if this leads to an underpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State will correct the underpayment in subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) if this leads to an overpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State reserves the right to recover any overpaid grant in subsequent Academy Financial Years, as appropriate, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Academy Trust.

58) If GAG or EAG is calculated incorrectly because the Academy Trust provides incorrect information to the Secretary of State then:

- a) if this leads to an underpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State may correct the underpayment in subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) If this leads to an overpayment of GAG, the Secretary of State reserves the right to recover any overpaid grant in subsequent Academy Financial Years, as appropriate, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Academy Trust.

59) The amounts of GAG for an Academy Financial Year will be determined annually by the Secretary of State. The amount of GAG for the Academy for the initial Academy Financial Year will be notified to the Academy Trust in a funding letter at a date preceding that year. For subsequent years the amount of GAG will be notified to the Academy Trust in a funding letter preceding that Academy Financial Year (the "Annual Letter of Funding"). The Annual Letter of Funding will not include the amount that the Academy Trust will receive in respect of grants for which information to enable timely calculation is not available or is incomplete, such grants will be notified as soon as practicable later in the year. Amounts of EAG will be notified to the Academy Trust wherever possible in the Annual Letter of Funding

or its equivalent or as soon as practicable thereafter.

60) The Secretary of State undertakes to pay GAG in monthly instalments on or before the twenty-fifth day of each month, each such instalment to fund the salaries and other payroll costs for the relevant month of all monthly paid employees and all other costs payable during the next following month. The detailed arrangements for payment will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding or its equivalent.

Other relevant funding

61) Not used.

62) The Secretary of State may meet costs incurred by the Academy Trust in connection with the transfer of employees from any predecessor school under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Payment of grant in respect of such costs is to be agreed between the parties on a case by case basis and the Academy Trust shall not budget on the basis that it will receive any grant in respect of such costs unless it is specifically notified that such grant will be paid.

63) The Academy Trust may also receive funding from an LA in respect of the provision detailed in statements of SEN for pupils attending an Academy in accordance with the provisions of Section 483A of the Education Act 1996 and regulations made under that section. The Academy Trust shall ensure that all provision detailed in statements of SEN is provided for such pupils.

64) Not used.

Financial and Accounting Requirements

General

65) The Academy Trust shall appoint an Accounting Officer and shall notify the Secretary of State of that appointment.

66) In relation to the use of grant paid to the Academy Trust by the Secretary of State, the Academy Trust shall abide by the requirements of, and have regard to

the guidance in, the Academies Financial Handbook published by the DfE and amended from time to time which sets out in detail provisions for the financial management of the Academy including guidance on financial systems and controls and accounting and reporting requirements, in so far as these are not inconsistent with any accounting and reporting requirements and guidance that it may be subject to by virtue of its being a charity.

67) The formal budget plan must be approved each Academy Financial Year by the Governing Body.

68) Any payment of grant by the Secretary of State in respect of the Academy is subject to his being satisfied as to the fulfilment by the Academy Trust of the following conditions:

- a) in its conduct and operation it shall apply financial and other controls which conform to the requirements both of propriety and of good financial management;
- b) arrangements have been made to maintain proper accounting records and that statements of income and expenditure and balance sheets may be produced in such form and frequency as the Secretary of State may from time to time reasonably direct;
- c) in addition to the obligation to fulfil the statutory requirements referred to in sub-clause f) below, the Academy Trust shall prepare its financial statements, Directors' report, Annual Accounts and its Annual Return for each Academy Financial Year in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as issued by the Charity Commission and updated from time to time as if the Academy Trust was a non-exempt Charity and in such form or manner and by such a date as the Secretary of State may reasonably direct and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator each Academy Financial Year;
- d) A statement of the accounting policies used should be sent to the Secretary of State with the financial statements and should carry an audit report stating that, in the opinion of the auditors, the statements show a true and fair view of the Academy Trust's affairs and that the grants were used for the purposes intended;

- e) the Academy Trust shall ensure that its accounts are audited annually by independent auditors appointed under arrangements approved by the Secretary of State;
- f) the Academy Trust prepares and files with the Companies Registry such annual accounts as are required by the Companies Act 2006;
- g) the Academy Trust shall publish on its website its Annual Accounts, Annual Report, Memorandum, Articles, Funding Agreement and a list of the names of the Governors of the Academy Trust;
- h) the Academy Trust insures or procures insurance by another person of its assets in accordance with normal commercial practice or under the terms of any subsisting leases in respect of the leasehold interest of the site upon which the Academy is situated.

69) In addition, and at his expense, the Secretary of State may instruct auditors to report to him on the adequacy and effectiveness of the accounting systems and internal controls maintained by the Academy Trust to standards determined by the Secretary of State and to make recommendations for improving the financial management of the Academy Trust.

70) The books of accounts and all relevant records, files and reports of the Academy Trust including those relating to financial controls, shall be open at all reasonable times to officials of the DfE and the National Audit Office and to contractors retained by the DfE or the National Audit Office for inspection or the carrying out of value for money studies; and the Academy Trust shall secure that those officials and contractors are given reasonable assistance with their enquiries. For the purposes of this clause 'relevant' means in any way relevant to the provision and use of grants provided by the Secretary of State under this Agreement.

71) The Academy Trust shall submit information relating to the Academy's finances to the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements of the Academies Financial Handbook as amended from time to time, or as otherwise specified from time to time by the Secretary of State.

72) At the beginning of any Academy Financial Year the Academy Trust may hold

unspent GAG from previous Academy Financial Years amounting to such percentage (if any) as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust prior to the beginning of that Academy Financial Year of the total GAG payable for the Academy in the Academy Financial Year just ended or such higher amount as may from time to time be agreed. The Academy Trust shall use such carried forward amount for such purpose, or subject to such restriction on its use, as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust.

73) Notwithstanding clause 72, any additional grant provided over and above that set out in clauses 42-48, and made in accordance with clauses 49-51 may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the Start-up Period or the circumstances set out in clause 51 come to an end.

74) Any unspent GAG not allowed to be carried forward under clauses 72-73 may be taken into account in the payment of subsequent grant.

74A) GAG paid by the Secretary of State shall only be used by the Academy Trust for the educational charitable purpose of advancing for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom, in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing by establishing, maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing an Academy offering a broad and balanced curriculum. Such funds shall not be used by the Academy Trust for any other charitable purpose without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, except where the use of such funds for that charitable purpose is merely incidental to their use for the educational charitable purpose of advancing for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom.

75) The Academy Trust may also spend or accumulate funds from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State for application to the benefit of the Academy as it sees fit. Any surplus arising from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State shall be separately identified in the Academy Trust's balance sheet.

76) The Academy Trust shall not, in relation to assets or property funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State or otherwise coming within the meaning of publicly funded land as defined by paragraph 22(3) of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed:

- a) except such as are given in normal contractual relations, give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort above a value as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust from time to time;
- b) write off any debts or liabilities owed to it, nor offer to make any ex gratia payments (such as staff severance or compensation payments), above a value as for the time being specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust from time to time;
- c) except as may be permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust, make any sale or purchase of or otherwise dispose of freehold or leasehold property including entering into a contract to dispose of land or granting an option to acquire an interest in land; or
- d) take up any leasehold or tenancy agreement for a term exceeding three years.

77) The Academy Trust shall provide 30 days' prior written notice to the Secretary of State, whether or not the circumstances require the Secretary of State's approval, of its intention to:

- a) give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort;
- b) write off any debts owed to it or offer to make any ex gratia payments;
- c) make any sale or purchase of or otherwise dispose of freehold or leasehold property including entering into a contract to dispose of land or granting an option to acquire an interest in land; or
- d) take up any leasehold or tenancy agreement for a term exceeding three years.

78) Each discovered loss of an amount exceeding the amount for the time being specified by the Secretary of State and arising from suspected theft or fraud, shall be reported by the Academy Trust to the Secretary of State at the earliest opportunity.

79) It is the responsibility of the Academy Trust to ensure that the Academy balances its budget from Academy Financial Year to Academy Financial Year. For the avoidance of doubt, this does not prevent the Academy Trust from:

- a) Subject to clause 72, carrying a surplus from one Academy Financial Year to the next; or
- b) carrying forward from a previous Academy Financial Year or Academy Financial Years a sufficient surplus or sufficient cumulative surpluses on grants from the Secretary of State to meet an in-year deficit on such grants in a subsequent financial year; or
- c) incurring an in-year deficit on funds from sources other than grants from the Secretary of State in any Academy Financial Year, provided it does not affect the Academy Trust's responsibility to ensure that the Academy balances its overall budget from Academy Financial Year to Academy Financial Year.

79A) The Academy Trust shall abide by the requirements of and have regard to the Charity Commission's guidance to charities and charity trustees and in particular the Charity Commission's guidance in Protecting Charities from Harm ('the compliance toolkit'). Any references in this document which require charity trustees to report to the Charity Commission should instead be interpreted as references to report to the Principal Regulator.

Borrowing Powers

80) Except as may be permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook (as amended from time to time) or otherwise as the Secretary of State may specify by notice in writing to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust shall not borrow against or so as to put at risk property or assets funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State without specific approval of the Secretary of State, such approval may only be granted in limited circumstances. The Academy Trust shall not

operate an overdraft except to cover irregularities in cash flow. Such an overdraft, and the maximum amount to be borrowed, shall require approval by the Academy Trust in General Meeting and in writing by the Secretary of State, and shall be subject to any conditions which the Secretary of State may reasonably impose.

81) The Academy Trust shall provide 30 days' written notice to the Secretary of State of its intention to borrow, whether or not such borrowing requires the Secretary of State's approval under clause 80 above.

Disposal of Assets

82) Where the Academy Trust acquires assets for a nil consideration or at an under value it shall be treated for the purpose of this Agreement as having incurred expenditure equal to the market value of those assets at the time that they were acquired. This provision shall not apply to assets transferred to the Academy Trust at nil or nominal consideration and which were previously used for the purposes of an Academy and/or were transferred from an LA, the value of which assets shall be disregarded.

83) The sale or disposal by other means, or reinvestment of proceeds from the disposal, of a capital asset by the Academy Trust shall require the consent of the Secretary of State, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed, where:

- a) the Secretary of State paid capital grant in excess of the value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State for the asset; or
- b) the asset was transferred to the Academy Trust from an LA for no or nominal consideration.

84) Furthermore, reinvestment of a percentage of the proceeds of disposal of a capital asset paid for with a capital grant from the Secretary of State shall require the Secretary of State's consent in the circumstances set out above and reinvestment exceeding the value for the time being specified by the Secretary of State or with other special features will be subject to Parliamentary approval. The percentage of the proceeds for which consent is needed is the percentage of the initial price of the asset which was paid by capital grant from the Secretary of State.

85) This clause applies in the event, during the lifetime of this Agreement, of the disposal of a capital asset for which capital grant of any amount was paid by the Secretary of State, where the asset was acquired by the Academy Trust. In this event, the Academy Trust shall repay to the Secretary of State the same proportion of the proceeds of the disposal as equates with the proportion of the original cost met by the Secretary of State, unless the Secretary of State agrees to some or all of the proceeds being retained by the Academy Trust for its charitable purposes.

86) This clause applies in the event, during the lifetime of this Agreement, that the Secretary of State consents to the disposal of an asset which was transferred to the Academy Trust from an LA for no or nominal consideration. In this event the Secretary of State may give consent on the basis that all or part of the proceeds of the disposal should be made over to the LA from which the asset was transferred, taking into account the amount of the proceeds to be reinvested by the Academy Trust. The Secretary of State will have regard to any representations from the Academy Trust and the LA from which the asset was transferred before giving consent under this clause.

87) Except with the consent of the Secretary of State, the Academy Trust shall not dispose of assets funded (whether in whole or in part) by the Secretary of State for a consideration less than the best price that can reasonably be obtained, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

88) The Academy Trust shall provide 30 days' written notice to the Secretary of State of its intention to dispose of assets for a consideration less than the best price that can reasonably be obtained, whether or not such disposal requires the Secretary of State's consent under clause 87 above.

TERMINATION

89) Either party may give not less than seven Academy Financial Years' written notice to terminate this Agreement, such notice to expire on 31 August 2021 or any subsequent anniversary of that date.

Termination Warning Notice

90) The Secretary of State shall be entitled to issue to the Academy Trust a

written notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement (“Termination Warning Notice”) where he considers that:

- a) the Academy is no longer meeting the requirements referred to in clause 10 of this Agreement (subject to clause 97);
- b) the conditions and requirements set out in clauses 12-33B of this Agreement are no longer being met;
- c) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low;
- d) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed;
- e) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened (whether by breakdown of discipline or otherwise); or
- f) the Academy Trust is otherwise in material breach of the provisions of this Agreement.

91) A Termination Warning Notice issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with clause 90 shall specify:

- a) reasons for the Secretary of State’s issue of the Termination Warning Notice;
- b) the remedial measures which the Secretary of State requires the Academy Trust to carry out, with associated deadlines, in order to rectify the defaults identified (“Specified Remedial Measures”); and
- c) the date by which the Academy Trust must respond to the Termination Warning Notice providing its representations with regard thereto or confirm that it accepts and agrees to undertake the Specified Remedial Measures.

92) The Secretary of State shall consider any response and representations from the Academy Trust which are received by the date specified in accordance with clause 91(c) and shall confirm whether he considers that:

- a) in the light of the Academy Trust’s representations in response to the Termination Warning Notice, some or all of the Specified Remedial Measures are not required to be implemented (and if so which) and/or the Specified Remedial Measures are being or will be implemented within the specified

timeframe; or

- b) subject to any further measures he reasonably requires ("Further Remedial Measures") being implemented by a specified date or any evidence he requires being provided, the implementation of such measures has been or will be successfully completed within the specified timeframes; or
- c) he is not satisfied that the Academy Trust will rectify the defaults identified in the Termination Warning Notice within the specified timeframes. (In such circumstances, the Secretary of State may notify the Academy Trust of his intention to terminate the Agreement on a specified date.)

93) The Secretary of State may by notice in writing terminate this Agreement with effect from a specified date in the event that:

- a) the Academy Trust has not, by the date specified in clause 91(c), responded to the Termination Warning Notice either confirming that it accepts and agrees to undertake the Specified Remedial Measures or providing its representations with regard to the Specified Remedial Measures; or
- b) the Academy Trust has not carried out the Specified Remedial Measures and/or Further Remedial Measures within the specified timeframes;

provided that having considered any representations made by the Academy Trust pursuant to clause 91(c), the Secretary of State remains satisfied that it is appropriate to terminate the Agreement.

Notice of Intention to Terminate

94) The Secretary of State may at any time give written notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement where the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Academy Trust in accordance with section 13(3) of the Education Act 2005 stating that in the Chief Inspector's opinion –

- (a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy; or
- (b) the Academy requires significant improvement.

95) Any notice issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with clause 94 shall

invite the Academy Trust to respond with any representations within a specified timeframe.

96) Where the Secretary of State has given notice of his intention to terminate this Agreement in accordance with clauses 94 and 95 and –

- (a) he has not received any representations from the Academy Trust within the timeframe specified in clause 95; or
- (b) having considered the representations made by the Academy Trust pursuant to clause 95, the Secretary of State remains satisfied that it is appropriate to terminate this Agreement

he may by notice in writing terminate this Agreement with effect from a specified date.

Termination with Immediate Effect

97) If the Secretary of State has cause to serve a notice on the Academy Trust under section 165 of the Education Act 2002 and a determination (from which all rights of appeal have been exhausted) has been made that the Academy shall be struck off the Register of Independent Schools, he may terminate this Agreement by notice in writing to the Academy Trust such termination to take effect on the date of the notice.

98) The Secretary of State may at any time by notice in writing terminate this Agreement, such termination to take effect on the date of the notice, on the occurrence, or where in his reasonable opinion there is a serious risk of occurrence, of any of the following events:-

- a) the Academy Trust calls a meeting of its creditors (whether formal or informal) or enters into any composition or arrangement (whether formal or informal) with its creditors; or
- b) the Academy Trust proposes a voluntary arrangement within Section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or
- c) the Academy Trust is unable to pay its debts within the meaning of Section

123 of the Insolvency Act 1986 provided that, for the purposes of this clause, Section 123 (1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 shall have effect as if the amount of £10,000 was substituted for £750. The Academy Trust shall not be deemed unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this clause if any such demand as is mentioned in the said Section is being contested in good faith by the Academy Trust; or

- d) the Academy Trust has a receiver and manager (with the exception of Receivers and Managers or Interim Managers appointed by the Charity Commission under the Charities Act 2011 or any subsequent re-enactment of that Act), administrator or administrative receiver appointed over all or any part of its undertakings, assets or income; or
- e) any distraint, execution or other process is levied or enforced on any of the Academy Trust's property and is not paid out, withdrawn or discharged within fifteen Business Days; or
- f) the Academy Trust has passed a resolution for its winding up; or
- g) an order is made for the winding up or administration of the Academy Trust.

99) The Academy Trust shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as possible after receiving any petition which may result in an order for the winding up or administration of the Academy Trust and shall provide an explanation to the Secretary of State of the circumstances giving rise to the service of such a petition.

Change of Control

100) The Secretary of State may at any time, subject to clause 102 below, terminate this Agreement by notice in writing to the Academy Trust such termination to take effect on the date of the notice in the event that there is a change:

- (a) in the Control of the Academy Trust;
- (b) in the Control of a legal entity that Controls the Academy Trust.

Provided that where a person ('P') is a member or director of the body corporate (as a corporation sole or otherwise) by virtue of an office, no change of Control arises merely by P's successor becoming a member or director in P's place.

101) The Academy Trust shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of any change or proposed change of Control within the meaning of clause 100 above, as soon as reasonably practicable after it has become aware of any such change, or proposed change, of Control.

102) When notifying the Secretary of State further to clause 101 the Academy Trust must seek the Secretary of State's agreement that, if he is satisfied that the person assuming Control is suitable, he will not in those circumstances exercise his right to terminate this Agreement further to clause 100.

Effect of Termination

103) Not used.

104) In the event of termination of this Agreement however occurring, the school shall cease to be an Academy within the meaning of Sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.

105) Subject to clauses 106 and 107, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement pursuant to clause 89 of this Agreement, the Secretary of State shall indemnify the Academy Trust. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than pursuant to clause 89 of this Agreement, the Secretary of State may in his absolute discretion indemnify or (to such extent if any as he may in his absolute discretion consider appropriate) compensate the Academy Trust.

106) The amount of any such indemnity or compensation shall be determined by the Secretary of State having regard to any representations made to him by the Academy Trust, and shall be paid at such times and in such manner as the Secretary of State may reasonably think fit.

107) The categories of expenditure incurred by the Academy Trust in consequence of the termination of this Agreement in respect of which the Secretary of State shall (where the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement pursuant to clause 89) indemnify the Academy Trust and may (where the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than pursuant to clause 89) in his absolute discretion indemnify or compensate the Academy Trust include (but not by way of limitation),

staff compensation and redundancy payments, compensation payments in respect of broken contracts, expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes, legal and other professional fees, and dissolution expenses.

108) Subject to clause 109, on the termination of this Agreement however occurring, the Academy Trust shall in respect of any of its capital assets at the date of termination:

- a) promptly transfer a proportion of the assets to a person nominated by the Secretary of State, if the Secretary of State considers that all or some of those assets need to be used for any educational purpose by that nominee. The proportion of the assets to be transferred shall be the same as the proportion of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or at a later date; or
- b) if the Secretary of State confirms that a transfer under clause 108(a) is not required, promptly repay to the Secretary of State a sum equivalent to the percentage of the value of the assets at the date of termination, or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of subsequent disposal of those assets. Such percentage to be the same as the percentage of the capital contribution made by the Secretary of State to the original value of those assets, whether that contribution was made on the establishment of the Academy or later.

109) The Secretary of State may waive in whole or in part the repayment due under clause 108(b) if:

- a) the Academy Trust obtains his permission to invest the proceeds of sale for its charitable objects; or
- b) the Secretary of State directs all or part of the repayment to be paid to the LA.

110) The sale or disposal by other means of publicly funded land held for the purposes of an Academy is now governed by Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

GENERAL

Information

111) Without prejudice to any other provision of this Agreement, the Secretary of State acting reasonably may from time to time call for information on the Academy relating to, but not restricted to, the following matters:

- a) curriculum;
- b) arrangements for the assessment of pupils;
- c) teaching staff including numbers, qualifications, experience, salaries, and teaching loads;
- d) class sizes;
- e) outreach work with other schools and the local community;
- f) operation of the admission criteria and over subscription arrangements for the Academy including numbers of applications for places and the number and characteristics of pupils accepted for admission;
- g) numbers of pupils excluded (including permanent and fixed term exclusions);
- h) levels of authorised and unauthorised absence;
- i) charging and remissions policies and the operation of those policies;
- j) organisation, operation and building management;
- k) financial controls
- l) compliance with the requirements of the Charity Commission's guidance to charities and charity trustees and in particular the Charity Commission's guidance in the Protecting Charities from Harm ('the compliance toolkit') and in (CC9): "Speaking Out: Guidance on Campaigning and Political Activities by Charities", as amended from time to time; and
- m) membership and proceedings of the Governing Body together with any other relevant information concerning the management or governance of the Academy which, subject to clause 115), is reasonably necessary for the Secretary of State to carry out his functions generally and in relation to this Agreement.

112) The Academy Trust shall make such information available to the Secretary of State, in such form and manner and at such times as may reasonably be required.

The Secretary of State shall provide the Academy Trust with such information as it may reasonably require of him for the running of the Academy.

Access by the Secretary of State's Officers

113) The Academy Trust shall allow access to the premises of the Academy at any reasonable time to DfE officials. All records, files and reports relating to the running of the Academy shall be available to them at any reasonable time. The Academy Trust shall provide the Secretary of State in advance with papers relating to the Academy prepared for meetings of the Governing Body and of the members of the Academy Trust. Two DfE officials shall be entitled to attend and to speak at all such meetings, but shall withdraw from any discussion of the Academy's or the Academy Trust's relationship with the Secretary of State or any discussion of bids for funding to the Secretary of State. The Academy Trust shall take any steps which are required to secure its compliance with the obligations imposed by this clause of this Agreement.

114) The Academy Trust shall ensure that:

- a) the agenda for every meeting of the Governing Body or any committee to whom the Governing Body delegates one or more of its functions to;
- b) the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the person acting as chairman of that meeting;
- c) the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
- d) any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting,

are made available for inspection by any interested party at the Academy and, as soon as is reasonably practicable, sent to the Secretary of State upon request.

115) There may be excluded from any item required to be made available for inspection by any interested party and to be sent to the Secretary of State by virtue of clause 114, any material relating to:

- a) a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at the Academy;
- b) a named pupil at, or candidate for admission to, the Academy; and

- c) any matter which, by reason of its nature, the Academy Trust is satisfied should remain confidential.

LAND

Restrictions on Land transfer

115A) Recognising that they are or will be receiving publicly funded land at nil consideration (which for the purposes of this transaction shall include leases granted at a peppercorn rent) the Academy Trust:

- a) shall, within 28 days from the transfer to it of the Land, apply to the Land Registry for a restriction in the proprietorship register (under section 43(1)(a) of the Land Registration Act 2002 in Form RX1 as prescribed by Rule 91 and Schedule 4 of the Land Registration Rules 2003) in the following terms:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT

- b) shall take any further steps required to ensure that the restriction referred to in clause 115A(a) is entered on the proprietorship register,
- c) shall provide the Secretary of State with confirmation of the entry of the restriction referred to in clause 115A(a) as soon as practicable after it receives notification from the Land Registry,
- d) in the event that it has not registered the restriction referred to in clause 115A(a), hereby consents to the entering of the restriction referred to in 115A(a) in the register by the Secretary of State (under s. 43(1)(b) of the Land Registration Act 2002),
- e) shall not, without the consent of the Secretary of State, apply to dis-apply, modify or remove (by cancellation or otherwise) a restriction entered in

accordance with clause 115A(a) or 115A(d) above, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Trust.

Notices

116) A notice or communication given to a party under or in connection with this Agreement:

- (a) shall be in writing and in English;
- (b) shall be sent to the party for the attention of the contact and at the address listed in clause 116A;
- (c) shall be sent by a method listed in clause 116C; and
- (d) is deemed received as set out in clause 116C if prepared and sent in accordance with this clause.

116A) The parties' addresses and contacts are:

Name of Party	Position of Contact	Address
Secretary of State	Head of Academies Division	Department for Education, Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT
The Academy Trust	Headteacher	Bengeworth CE Academy, Kings Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU

116B) A party may change its details given in the table in clause 116A) by giving notice, the change taking effect for the party notified of the change at 9.00 am on the date five Business Days after deemed receipt of the notice.

116C) Any notice or other communication required to be given to a party under or in connection with this Agreement shall be delivered by hand or sent by pre-paid first-class post or other next working day delivery service. Any notice or communication shall be deemed to have been received if delivered by hand, on signature of a delivery receipt or at the time the notice is left at the address

specified in Clause 116A, or otherwise at 9.00 am on the second Business Day after posting.

116D) This clause does not apply to the service of any proceedings or other documents in any legal action. For the purposes of clause 116, "writing" shall not include e-mail.

117) The service by the Secretary of State of a notice of termination of this Agreement shall not prejudice the ability of the Academy Trust (if it wishes to do so) during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement and to receive GAG and EAG in respect of them.

Complaints

117A) If a complaint is made about matters arising in whole or in part prior to the opening of the Academy, as referred to in clause 11 above, and all or part of that complaint was being or had been investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III of the Local Government Act 1974 ("Part III") or that complaint in whole or in part could have been investigated under Part III had the school the Academy replaced remained a maintained school, the Academy Trust:

- a) will abide by the provisions of Part III as though the Academy were a maintained school;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State shall have the power to investigate the matter complained of as if it had taken place after conversion;
- c) agrees to act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as though that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school.

117B) If the Secretary of State could have given an order and/or a direction under section 496 and/or section 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 11 above) and that order and/or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately prior to conversion, the Academy Trust agrees:

- a) the Secretary of State may give orders and/or directions to the Academy Trust as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school;
- b) to act in accordance with any such order and/or direction from the Secretary of State.

117C) If at the time of the opening of the Academy the investigation of a complaint made to the governing body of the school the Academy replaced (as referred to in clause 11 above) has not yet been completed, the Academy Trust shall continue to investigate that complaint in accordance with the complaints procedures established by that governing body.

117D) If a complaint is made to the Academy Trust about matters arising in whole or in part during the 12 months prior to the opening of the Academy, the Academy Trust agrees to investigate that complaint as if the matter complained of had taken place after the opening of the Academy.

General

118) This Agreement shall not be assignable by the Academy Trust.

119) No delay, neglect or forbearance on the part of the Secretary of State in enforcing (in whole or in part) any provision of this Agreement or in exercising (in whole or in part) any right or remedy conferred on him by this Agreement shall be or be deemed to be a waiver of such provision or right or remedy or a waiver of any other provision or right or remedy or shall in any way prejudice any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement or shall amount to an election not to enforce such provision or exercise such right or remedy (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any right to terminate this Agreement). No single or partial exercise of such right or remedy shall preclude or restrict the further exercise of that or any other right or remedy.

120) The Secretary of State and the Academy Trust recognise the difficulties in catering in this Agreement for all the circumstances which may arise in relation to the Academy and undertake in good faith to conduct such consultations as may

from time to time be desirable in order to promote the interests of the Academy throughout the currency of this Agreement.

121) Termination of this agreement, for any reason, shall not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.

122) This deed may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all the counterparts shall together constitute the one agreement.

123) This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales.

124) The parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim that arises out of or in connection with this agreement or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

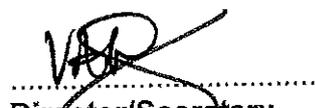
This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

29 May

2014

Executed on behalf of Bengeworth CE Academy by:


.....
Director

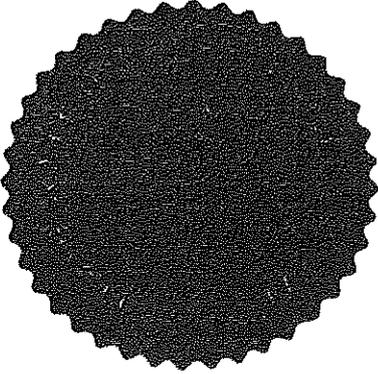

.....
Director/Secretary

The Corporate Seal of the Secretary of State for Education, hereunto affixed is authenticated by:



A handwritten signature in black ink, written over a horizontal dotted line. The signature is cursive and appears to read 'A. Smith'.

Duly Authorised



**THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
& COMPANIES (REGISTRATION) REGULATIONS 2008 (SI 2008/3014)**

A COMPANY NOT HAVING A SHARE CAPITAL

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION

OF

Bengeworth CE Academy

**THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
& COMPANIES (REGISTRATION) REGULATIONS 2008 (SI 2008/3014)**

SCHEDULE 2

A COMPANY NOT HAVING A SHARE CAPITAL

Regulation 2(b)

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION OF

Bengeworth CE Academy

Each subscriber to this memorandum of association wishes to form a company under the Companies Act 2006 and agrees to become a member of the company.

Name of each subscriber Authentication by each subscriber

Name: WORCESTER DIOCESAN ACADEMIES TRUST

Signature:



Name: LAURENCE FLETCHER

Signature:



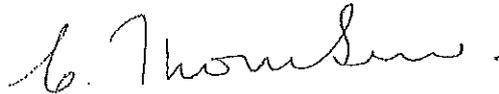
Name: ROBERT BANKS

Signature:



Name: CAROLE THOMSON

Signature:



Dated

11th March 2014

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006

|

A COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE

ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

OF

Bengeworth CE Academy

COMPANY NUMBER: 8943457

18 April 2013v2

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
COMPANY LIMITED BY GUARANTEE
ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION
OF
Bengeworth CE Academy

INTERPRETATION

1. In these Articles:-

- (a) "the Academy" means the school referred to in Article 4 and established by the Academy Trust;
- (b) "Academy Financial Year" means the academic year from 1st of September to 31st of August the following year;
- (c) "the Academy Trust" means the company intended to be regulated by these Articles and referred to in Article 2;
- (d) "the Articles" means these Articles of Association of the Academy Trust;
- (e) "Chief Inspector" means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills or his successor;
- (f) "clear days" in relation to the period of a notice means the period excluding the day when the notice is given or deemed to be given and the day on which it is to take effect;
- (g) "Clerk" means the clerk to the Governors or any other person appointed to perform the duties of the clerk to the Governors, including a joint, assistant or deputy clerk;
- (h) "Diocese" means the Church of England diocese in which the Academy is situated;
- (i) "Diocesan Board of Education" means that body constituted under the Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 for the Diocese and any successor body;

- (j) "Diocesan Board of Finance" means the Diocesan Board of Finance for the Diocese;
- (k) "Diocesan Director of Education" means the chief officer of the Diocesan Board of Education;
- (l) "financial expert" means an individual, company or firm who is authorised to give investment advice under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;
- (m) "Foundation Governors" means governors appointed by the Foundation Members or nominated by the Diocesan Board of Education;
- (n) "Foundation Members" means those persons holding office or appointed further to Article 12;
- (o) "Funding Agreement" means the agreement made under section 1 of the Academies Act 2010 between the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State to establish the Academy;
- (p) "the Governors" means the directors of the Academy Trust (and "Governor" means any one of those directors), subject to the definition of this term at Article 6.10(b) in relation to Articles 6.2 - 6.10;
- (q) "Local Authority Associated Persons" means any person associated with any local authority within the meaning given in section 69 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989;
- (r) "Member" means a member of the Academy Trust and someone who as such is bound by the undertaking contained in Article 8;
- (s) "the Memorandum" means the Memorandum of Association of the Academy Trust;
- (t) "Office" means the registered office of the Academy Trust;
- (u) "the Parent Governors" means the Governors appointed pursuant to Articles 53 to 58 inclusive;
- (v) "Parish" means the ecclesiastical parish in which the Academy is situated or which it serves;
- (w) "Principal" means the head teacher of the Academy;

- (x) "Principal Regulator" means the body or person appointed as the Principal Regulator under the Charities Act 2011;
- (y) "the seal" means the common seal of the Academy Trust if it has one;
- (z) "Reserved Teacher" has the same meaning given to the term "reserved teacher" in section 58(2) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 namely a teacher who is (i) selected for their fitness and competence to give religious education as is required in accordance with arrangements under paragraph 3(3) of Schedule 19 of that Act (arrangements for religious education in accordance with the Object and the school's trust deed); and (ii) is specifically appointed to do so;
- (aa) "Secretary of State" means the Secretary of State for Education or his successor;
- (bb) "Staff Governor" means an employee of the Academy Trust who may be appointed as a Governor pursuant to Article 50A;
- (cc) "teacher" means a person employed under a contract of employment or a contract for services or otherwise engaged to provide his services as a teacher at the Academy;
- (dd) "Trustees" means those trustees holding the school site and providing it to the Academy Trust for use and occupation by the Academy;
- (ee) "the United Kingdom" means Great Britain and Northern Ireland;
- (ff) words importing the masculine gender only shall include the feminine gender. Words importing the singular number shall include the plural number, and vice versa;
- (gg) subject as aforesaid, words or expressions contained in these Articles shall, unless the context requires otherwise, bear the same meaning as in the Companies Act 2006, as appropriate;
- (hh) any reference to a statute or statutory provision or measure shall include any statute or statutory provision or measure which replaces or supersedes such statute or statutory provision or measure including any modification or amendment thereto.

2. The company's name is **Bengeworth CE Academy** (and in this document it is called "**the Academy Trust**").
3. The Academy Trust's registered office is to be situated in England and Wales.

OBJECTS

4. The Academy Trust's object (the "**Object**") is specifically restricted to the following:

to advance for the public benefit education in the United Kingdom, in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing by establishing, maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing a school with a designated Church of England religious character offering a broad and balanced curriculum (the "**Academy**") conducted in accordance with the principles, practices and tenets of the Church of England both generally and in particular in relation to arranging for religious education and daily acts of worship (as required by the Funding Agreement) and having regard to any advice of the Diocesan Board of Education.
5. In furtherance of the Object but not further or otherwise the Academy Trust may exercise the following powers:
 - (a) to draw, make, accept, endorse, discount, execute and issue promissory notes, bills, cheques and other instruments, and to operate bank accounts in the name of the Academy Trust;
 - (b) to raise funds and to invite and receive contributions provided that in raising funds the Academy Trust shall not undertake any substantial permanent trading activities and shall conform to any relevant statutory regulations;
 - (c) (subject to such consents as may be required by law or as may be required from the Trustees as landlord/licensor where this is the case) to acquire, alter, improve and charge or otherwise dispose of property;
 - (d) subject to Article 6 below to employ such staff, as are necessary for the proper pursuit of the Object (including the maintenance of an effective Church of England ethos) and to make all reasonable and necessary provision for the payments of pensions and superannuation to staff and their dependants;

- (e) to establish or support, whether financially or otherwise, any charitable companies, trusts, associations or institutions formed for all or any of the Object;
- (f) to co-operate with other charities, other independent schools, and schools maintained by a local authority, voluntary bodies and statutory authorities operating in furtherance of the Object and to exchange information and advice with them;
- (g) to pay out of funds of the Academy Trust the costs, charges and expenses of and incidental to the formation and registration of the Academy Trust;
- (h) to establish, maintain, carry on, manage and develop the Academy at Kings Road, Evesham, Worcestershire WR11 3EU;
- (i) to offer scholarships, exhibitions, prizes and awards to pupils and former pupils, and otherwise to encourage and assist pupils and former pupils;
- (j) to provide educational facilities and services to students of all ages and the wider community for the public benefit;
- (k) to carry out research into the development and application of new techniques in education in particular in relation to its approach to curriculum development and delivery and to publish the results of such research, and to develop means of benefiting from application of the experience of industry, commerce, other schools and the voluntary sector to the education of pupils in academies;
- (l) subject to such consents as may be required from the Trustees or otherwise required by law and/or by any contract entered into by or on behalf of the Academy Trust to borrow and raise money for the furtherance of the Object in such manner and on such security as the Academy Trust may think fit;
- (m) to deposit or invest any funds of the Academy Trust not immediately required for the furtherance of its Object (but to invest only after obtaining such advice from a financial expert as the Governors consider necessary and having regard to the suitability of investments and the need for diversification);
- (n) to delegate the management of investments to a financial expert, but only on

terms that:

- (i) the investment policy is set down in writing for the financial expert by the Governors;
 - (ii) every transaction is reported promptly to the Governors;
 - (iii) the performance of the investments is reviewed regularly with the Governors;
 - (iv) the Governors are entitled to cancel the delegation arrangement at any time;
 - (v) the investment policy and the delegation arrangement are reviewed at least once a year;
 - (vi) all payments due to the financial expert are on a scale or at a level which is agreed in advance and are notified promptly to the Governors on receipt; and
 - (vii) the financial expert must not do anything outside the powers of the Governors;
- (o) to arrange for investments or other property of the Academy Trust to be held in the name of a nominee company acting under the control of the Governors or of a financial expert acting under their instructions, and to pay any reasonable fee required;
- (p) to provide indemnity insurance to Governors in accordance with, and subject to the conditions of section 232 to 235 of the Companies Act 2006, section 189 of the Charities Act 2011 or any other provision of law applicable to charitable companies and any such indemnity is limited accordingly;
- (q) to establish subsidiary companies to carry on any trade or business for the purpose of raising funds for the Academy Trust;
- (r) to do all such other lawful things as are necessary for or are incidental to or conducive to the achievement of the Object and appropriate to the religious character of the Academy.

6.1 The income and property of the Academy Trust shall be applied solely towards the promotion of the Object.

18 April 2013v2

6.2 None of the income or property of the Academy Trust may be paid or transferred directly or indirectly by way of dividend bonus or otherwise by way of profit to any member of the Academy Trust. Nonetheless a member of the Academy Trust who is not also a Governor may:

- (a) benefit as a beneficiary of the Academy Trust;
- (b) be paid reasonable and proper remuneration for any goods or services supplied to the Academy Trust;
- (c) be paid rent for premises let by the member of the Academy Trust if the amount of the rent and other terms of the letting are reasonable and proper; and
- (d) be paid interest on money lent to the Academy Trust at a reasonable and proper rate, such rate not to exceed 2 per cent per annum below the base lending rate of a UK clearing bank selected by the Governors, or 0.5%, whichever is the higher.

6.3 A Governor may benefit from any indemnity insurance purchased at the Academy Trust's expense to cover the liability of the Governors which by virtue of any rule of law would otherwise attach to them in respect of any negligence, default or breach of trust or breach of duty of which they may be guilty in relation to the Academy Trust: provided that any such insurance shall not extend to:

- (i) any claim arising from any act or omission which the Governors knew to be a breach of trust or breach of duty or which was committed by the Governors in reckless disregard to whether it was a breach of trust or breach of duty or not; and
- (ii) provided also that any such insurance shall not extend to the costs of any unsuccessful defence to a criminal prosecution brought against the Governors in their capacity as directors of the Academy Trust.

Further, this Article does not authorise a Governor to benefit from any indemnity insurance that would be rendered void by any provision of the Companies Act 2006, the Charities Act 2011 or any other provision of law.

6.4 A company, which has shares listed on a recognised stock exchange and of which any one Governor holds no more than 1% of the issued capital of that company, may receive fees, remuneration or other benefit in money or money's worth from the Academy Trust.

6.5 A Governor may at the discretion of the Governors be reimbursed from the property of the Academy Trust for reasonable expenses properly incurred by him or her when acting on behalf of the Academy Trust, but excluding expenses in connection with foreign travel.

6.6 No Governor may:

- (a) buy any goods or services from the Academy Trust;
- (b) sell goods, services, or any interest in land to the Academy Trust;
- (c) be employed by or receive any remuneration from the Academy Trust (other than the Principal or a Staff Governor whose employment and/or remuneration is subject to the procedure and conditions in Article 6.8); or
- (d) receive any other financial benefit from the Academy Trust; unless:
 - (i) the payment is permitted by Article 6.7 and the Governors follow the procedure and observe the conditions set out in Article 6.8; or
 - (ii) the Governors obtain the prior written approval of the Charity Commission and fully comply with any procedures it prescribes.

6.7 Subject to Article 6.8, a Governor may:

- (a) receive a benefit from the Academy Trust in the capacity of a beneficiary of the Academy Trust;
- (b) be employed by the Academy Trust or enter into a contract for the supply of goods or services to the Academy Trust, other than for acting as a Governor;

- (c) receive interest on money lent to the Academy Trust at a reasonable and proper rate not exceeding 2% per annum below the base rate of a clearing bank to be selected by the Governors, or 0.5%, whichever is the higher; and
- (d) receive rent for premises let by the Governor to the Academy Trust if the amount of the rent and the other terms of the lease are reasonable and proper.

6.8 The Academy Trust and its Governors may only rely upon the authority provided by Article 6.7 if each of the following conditions is satisfied:

- (a) the remuneration or other sums paid to the Governor do not exceed an amount that is reasonable in all the circumstances;
- (b) the Governor is absent from the part of any meeting at which there is discussion of:
 - (i) his or her employment, remuneration, or any matter concerning the contract, payment or benefit; or
 - (ii) his or her performance in the employment, or his or her performance of the contract; or
 - (iii) any proposal to enter into any other contract or arrangement with him or her or to confer any benefit upon him or her that would be permitted under Article 6.7; or
 - (iv) any other matter relating to a payment or the conferring of any benefit permitted by Article 6.7;
- (c) the Governor does not vote on any such matter and is not to be counted when calculating whether a quorum of Governors is present at the meeting;
- (d) save in relation to employing or contracting with the Principal or a Staff Governor the other Governors are satisfied that it is in the interests of the Academy Trust to employ or to contract with that Governor rather than with someone who is not

a Governor. In reaching that decision the Governors must balance the advantage of employing a Governor against the disadvantages of doing so (especially the loss of the Governor's services as a result of dealing with the Governor's conflict of interest);

- (e) the reason for their decision is recorded by the Governors in the minute book; and
- (f) a majority of the Governors then in office have received no such payments or benefit.

6.9 The provision in Article 6.6(c) that no Governor may be employed by or receive any remuneration from the Academy Trust (other than the Principal or a Staff Governor) does not apply to an existing employee of the Academy Trust who is subsequently elected or appointed as a Governor save that this Article shall only allow such a Governor to receive remuneration or benefit from the Academy Trust in his capacity as an employee of the Academy Trust and provided that the procedure as set out in Articles 6.8(b)(i), (ii) and 6.8 (c) is followed.

6.10 In Articles 6.2 - 6.10:

- (a) "Academy Trust" shall include any company in which the Academy Trust:
 - holds more than 50% of the shares; or
 - controls more than 50% of the voting rights attached to the shares; or
 - has the right to appoint one or more directors to the board of the company;
- (b) "Governor" shall include any child, stepchild, parent, grandchild, grandparent, brother, sister or spouse of the governor or any person living with the governor as his or her partner; and
- (c) the employment or remuneration of a Governor includes the engagement or remuneration of any firm or company in which the Governor is:
 - (i) a partner;
 - (ii) an employee;
 - (iii) a consultant;

- (iv) a director;
- (v) a member; or
- (vi) a shareholder, unless the shares of the company are listed on a recognised stock exchange and the Governor holds less than 1% of the issued capital.

7. The liability of the members of the Academy Trust is limited.
8. Every member of the Academy Trust undertakes to contribute such amount as may be required (not exceeding £10) to the Academy Trust's assets if it should be wound up while he or she is a member or within one year after he or she ceases to be a member, for payment of the Academy Trust's debts and liabilities before he or she ceases to be a member, and of the costs, charges and expenses of winding up, and for the adjustment of the rights of the contributories among themselves.
9. If the Academy Trust is wound up or dissolved and after all its debts and liabilities (including any under section 2 of the Academies Act 2010) have been satisfied there remains any property it shall not be paid to or distributed among the members of the Academy Trust, but shall be given or transferred to some other charity or charities having objects similar to the Object which prohibits the distribution of its or their income and property to an extent at least as great as is imposed on the Academy Trust by Article 6 above, chosen by the members of the Academy Trust at or before the time of dissolution and if that cannot be done then to some other charitable object.
10. No alteration or addition shall be made to or in the provisions of the Memorandum and/or Articles without the written consent of the Foundation Members, the Trustees and the Diocesan Board of Education
11. No alteration or addition shall be made to or in the provisions of the Articles which would have the effect (a) that the Academy Trust would cease to be a company to which section 60 of the Companies Act 2006 applies; or (b) that the Academy Trust would cease to be a charity.

MEMBERS

12. The Members of the Academy Trust shall comprise:

(a) the signatories to the Memorandum who are;

(i) Worcester Diocesan Academies Trust;

(ii) the chairman of the Governors;

(iii) Robert Banks; and

(iv) Janet Osborne.

(b) not used

(c) not used;

(d) any person appointed under Article 16A; and

(e) any person appointed under Article 16.

13. Each of the persons entitled to appoint Members in Article 12 shall have the right from time to time by written notice delivered to the Office to remove any Member appointed by them and to appoint a replacement Member to fill a vacancy whether resulting from such removal or otherwise.

14. If any of the persons entitled to appoint Members in Article 12:

(a) in the case of an individual, die or become legally incapacitated;

(b) in the case of a corporate entity, cease to exist and are not replaced by a successor institution;

(c) becomes insolvent or makes any arrangement or composition with their creditors generally; or

(d) ceases to be a Member,

their right to appoint Members under these Articles shall vest in the remaining Members.

15. Membership will terminate automatically if:

- (a) a Member (which is a corporate entity) ceases to exist and is not replaced by a successor institution;
- (b) a Member (who is an individual) dies or becomes incapable by reason of illness or injury of managing and administering his own affairs;
- (c) a Member becomes insolvent or makes any arrangement or composition with that Member's creditors generally.

15A. The Members may agree unanimously in writing (in consultation with the Diocesan Board of Education) to remove any Member who is a signatory to the Memorandum (save that this provision shall not apply to the Foundation Member), provided that it is in the interests of the Academy Trust to remove such a Member.

16. The Members with the written consent of the Diocesan Board of Education may agree by passing a special resolution in writing to appoint such additional Members as they think fit and may agree by passing a special resolution in writing to remove any such additional Members, provided that such appointment or removal is in the interests of the Academy Trust.

16A. Upon (a) the resignation or removal of any Member (including a signatory to the Memorandum) other than a Foundation Member and/or (b) any other termination of such a Member's (other than a Foundation Member's) position as Member, the Members shall appoint (by majority) a replacement Member if required in order to ensure that the number of Foundation Members does not exceed 25% of the total number of Members.

16B. If the number of Foundation Members pursuant to Article 12(b)(i) and 12(b)(ii) is less than 25% of the total number of Members then the Diocesan Board of Education may appoint an additional Foundation Member provided that the total number of Foundation Members would not thereby exceed 25% of the total number of Members.

17. Every person nominated to be a Member of the Academy Trust shall:

- (a) either sign a written consent to become a Member or sign the register of Members on becoming a Member; and

(b) give an undertaking to the Foundation Members to uphold the Object of the Academy Trust.

18. Any Member may resign provided that after such resignation the number of Members is not less than three. A Member shall cease to be one immediately on the receipt by the Academy Trust of a notice in writing signed by the person or persons entitled to remove him under Articles 13 or 16 provided that no such notice shall take effect when the number of Members is less than three unless it contains or is accompanied by the appointment of a replacement Member.

GENERAL MEETINGS

19. The Academy Trust shall hold an Annual General Meeting each year in addition to any other meetings in that year, and shall specify the meeting as such in the notices calling it; and not more than fifteen months shall elapse between the date of one Annual General Meeting of the Academy Trust and that of the next. Provided that so long as the Academy Trust holds its first Annual General Meeting within eighteen months of its incorporation, it need not hold it in the year of its incorporation or in the following year. The Annual General Meeting shall be held at such time and place as the Governors shall appoint. All meetings other than Annual General Meetings shall be called General Meetings.

20. The Governors may call general meetings and, on the requisition of Members pursuant to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, shall forthwith proceed to convene a general meeting in accordance with that Act. If there are not within the United Kingdom sufficient Governors to call a general meeting, any Governor or any Member of the Academy Trust may call a general meeting.

NOTICE OF GENERAL MEETINGS

21. General meetings shall be called by at least fourteen clear days' notice but a general meeting may be called by shorter notice if it is so agreed by a majority in number of Members having a right to attend and vote and together representing not less than 90% of the total voting rights at that meeting.

The notice shall specify the time and place of the meeting and the general nature of the business to be transacted and, in the case of an Annual General Meeting, shall

specify the meeting as such. The notice shall also state that the Member is entitled to appoint a proxy.

The notice shall be given to all the Members, to the Governors and auditors.

22. The accidental omission to give notice of a meeting to, or the non-receipt of notice of a meeting by, any person entitled to receive notice shall not invalidate the proceedings at that meeting.

PROCEEDINGS AT GENERAL MEETINGS

23. No business shall be transacted at any meeting unless a quorum is present. A Member counts towards the quorum by being present either in person or by proxy. Two persons entitled to vote upon the business to be transacted, each being a Member or a proxy of a Member or a duly authorised representative of a Member organisation shall constitute a quorum.
24. If a quorum is not present within half an hour from the time appointed for the meeting, or if during a meeting a quorum ceases to be present, the meeting shall stand adjourned to the same day in the next week at the same time and place or to such time and place as the Governors may determine.
25. If present, the chairman, if any, of the Governors shall preside as chairman of the meeting.
26. If the chairman of the Governors is not present within fifteen minutes after the time appointed for holding the meeting, the Members present and entitled to vote shall choose one of their number to be chairman.
27. A Governor shall, notwithstanding that he is not a Member, be entitled to attend and speak at any general meeting.
28. The chairman may, with the consent of a majority of the Members at a meeting at which a quorum is present (and shall if so directed by the meeting), adjourn the meeting from time to time and from place to place, but no business shall be transacted at any adjourned meeting other than the business which might properly have been transacted at the meeting had the adjournment not taken place. When a meeting is

adjourned for fourteen days or more, at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time, date and place of the adjourned meeting and the general nature of the business to be transacted. Otherwise it shall not be necessary to give any such notice.

29. A resolution put to the vote of the meeting shall be decided on a show of hands unless before, or on the declaration of the result of the show of hands a poll is duly demanded. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, a poll may be demanded:
 - (a) by the chairman; or
 - (b) by at least two Members having the right to vote at the meeting; or
 - (c) by a Member or Members representing not less than one-tenth of the total voting rights of all the Members having the right to vote at the meeting.
30. Unless a poll is duly demanded a declaration by the chairman that a resolution has been carried or carried unanimously, or by a particular majority, or lost, or not carried by a particular majority and an entry to that effect in the minutes of the meeting shall be conclusive evidence of the fact without proof of the number or proportion of the votes recorded in favour of or against such resolution.
31. The demand for a poll may be withdrawn, before the poll is taken, but only with the consent of the chairman. The withdrawal of a demand for a poll shall not invalidate the result of a show of hands declared before the demand for the poll was made.
32. A poll shall be taken as the chairman directs and he may appoint scrutineers (who need not be Members) and fix a time, date and place for declaring the results. The result of the poll shall be deemed to be the resolution of the meeting at which the poll was demanded.
33. A poll demanded on the election of the chairman or on a question of adjournment shall be taken immediately. A poll demanded on any other question shall be taken either immediately or at such time, date and place as the chairman directs not being more than thirty days after the poll is demanded. The demand for a poll shall not prevent continuance of a meeting for the transaction of any business other than the question on which the poll is demanded. If a poll is demanded before the declaration of the

result of a show of hands and the demand is duly withdrawn, the meeting shall continue as if the demand had not been made.

34. No notice need be given of a poll not taken immediately if the time, date and place at which it is to be taken are announced at the meeting at which it is demanded. In other cases at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time, date and place at which the poll is to be taken.
35. A resolution in writing agreed by such number of Members as required if it had been proposed at a general meeting shall be as effectual as if it had been passed at a general meeting duly convened and held provided that a copy of the proposed resolution has been sent to every Member. The resolution may consist of several instruments in the like form each agreed by one or more Members.

VOTES OF MEMBERS

36. On the show of hands every Member present in person shall have one vote. On a poll every Member present in person or by proxy shall have one vote.
37. Not used.
38. No Member shall be entitled to vote at any general meeting unless all moneys then payable by him to the Academy have been paid
39. No objections shall be raised to the qualification of any person to vote at any general meeting except at the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote objected to is tendered, and every vote not disallowed at the meeting shall be valid. Any objection made in due time shall be referred to the chairman whose decision shall be final and conclusive.
40. An instrument appointing a proxy shall be in writing, signed by or on behalf of the appointer and shall be in the following form (or in a form as near thereto as circumstances allow or in any other form which is usual or which the Governors may approve) -

"I/We,, of, being a Member/Members of the above named Academy Trust, hereby appoint of, or in his absence, of as

my/our proxy to attend, speak and vote in my/our name[s] and on my/our behalf at the annual general meeting/ general meeting of the Academy Trust to be held on20[], and at any adjournment thereof.

Signed on 20[]”

41. Where it is desired to afford Members an opportunity of instructing the proxy how he shall act the instrument appointing a proxy shall be in the following form (or in a form as near thereto as circumstances allow or in any other form which is usual or which the Governors may approve) -

“I/We,, of, being a Member/Members of the above-named Academy Trust, hereby appoint of, or in his absence, of, as my/our proxy to attend, speak and vote in my/our name[s] and on my/our behalf at the annual general meeting/ general meeting of the Academy Trust, to be held on 20[], and at any adjournment thereof.

This form is to be used in respect of the resolutions mentioned below as follows:

Resolution No. 1 *for * against

Resolution No. 2 *for * against.

*Strike out whichever is not desired.

Unless otherwise instructed, the proxy may vote as he thinks fit or abstain from voting.

Signed on 20[]”

42. The instrument appointing a proxy and any authority under which it is signed or a copy of such authority certified by a notary or in some other way approved by the Members may:
- (a) be deposited at the office or at such other place within the United Kingdom as is specified in the notice convening the meeting or in any instrument of proxy sent out by the Academy Trust in relation to the meeting not less than 48 hours before the time for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the person named in the instrument proposes to vote; or

- (b) in the case of a poll taken more than 48 hours after it is demanded, be deposited as aforesaid after the poll has been demanded and not less than 24 hours before the time appointed for the taking of the poll; or
- (c) where the poll is not taken forthwith but is taken not more than 48 hours after it was demanded, be delivered at the meeting at which the poll was demanded to the chairman or to the Clerk or to any Governor,

and an instrument of proxy which is not deposited or delivered in a manner so permitted shall be invalid.

- 43. A vote given or poll demanded by proxy or by the duly authorised representative of a corporation shall be valid notwithstanding the previous determination of the authority of the person voting or demanding a poll unless notice of the determination was received by the Academy Trust at the office or at such other place at which the instrument of proxy was duly deposited before the commencement of the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote given or the poll demanded or (or in the case of a poll taken otherwise than on the same day as the meeting or adjourned meeting) the time appointed for taking the poll.
- 44. Any organisation which is a Member of the Academy Trust may by resolution of its board of directors or other governing body authorise such person as it thinks fit to act as its representative at any meeting of the Academy Trust, and the person so authorised shall be entitled to exercise the same powers on behalf of the organisation which he represents as that organisation could exercise if it were an individual Member of the Academy Trust.

GOVERNORS

- 45. The number of Governors shall be not less than three nor more than 11.
- 45A. All Governors shall upon their appointment give a written undertaking to the Foundation Members/Trustees to uphold the Object of the Academy Trust.
- 46. Subject to Articles 48 and 49, the Academy Trust shall have the following Governors:
 - (a) Up to 3 Governors, appointed under Article 50;

- (b) Foundation Governors, appointed and/or holding office further to Article 51;
 - (c) not used;
 - (d) any Staff Governors, if appointed under Article 50A;
 - (e) a minimum of two Parent Governors appointed under Articles 53-58;
 - (f) the Principal.
47. The Academy Trust may also have any Co-opted Governor appointed under Article 59.
48. The first Governors shall be those persons named in the statement delivered pursuant to sections 9 and 12 of the Companies Act 2006.
49. Future Governors shall be appointed or elected, as the case may be, under these Articles. Where it is not possible for such a Governor to be appointed or elected due to the fact that an Academy has not yet been established, then the relevant Article or part thereof shall not apply.

APPOINTMENT OF GOVERNORS

50. The Members may appoint up to 3 Governors.
- 50A. The Members may appoint Staff Governors through such process as they may determine, provided that the total number of Governors (including the Principal) who are employees of the Academy Trust does not exceed one third of the total number of Governors.
51. The Diocesan Board of Education may appoint Foundation Governors provided that the total number of Foundation Governors shall not exceed 25% of the total number of Governors. 52. Not used.
53. Subject to Article 57, the Parent Governors shall be elected by parents of registered pupils at the Academy. A Parent Governor must be a parent of a pupil at the Academy at the time when he is elected.
54. The Governing Body shall make all necessary arrangements for, and determine all other matters relating to, an election of Parent Governors, including any question of

whether a person is a parent of a registered pupil at the Academy. Any election of Parent Governors which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.

55. The arrangements made for the election of a Parent Governor shall provide for every person who is entitled to vote in the election to have an opportunity to do so by post or, if he prefers, by having his ballot paper returned to the Academy Trust by a registered pupil at the Academy.
56. Where a vacancy for a Parent Governor is required to be filled by election, the Governing Body shall take such steps as are reasonably practical to secure that every person who is known to them to be a parent of a registered pupil at the Academy is informed of the vacancy and that it is required to be filled by election, informed that he is entitled to stand as a candidate, and vote at the election, and given an opportunity to do so.
57. The number of Parent Governors required shall be made up by Parent Governors appointed by the Governing Body if the number of parents standing for election is less than the number of vacancies.
58. In appointing a Parent Governor the Governing Body shall appoint a person who is the parent of a registered pupil at the Academy; or where it is not reasonably practical to do so, a person who is the parent of a child of compulsory school age.

CO-OPTED GOVERNORS

59. The Governors may appoint up to 2 Co-opted Governors. A 'Co-opted Governor' means a person who is appointed to be a Governor by being Co-opted by Governors who have not themselves been so appointed. The Governors may not co-opt an employee of the Academy Trust as a Co-opted Governor if thereby the number of Governors who are employees of the Academy Trust would exceed one third of the total number of Governors (including the Principal) and any co-options that would breach the 25% / 75% balance must be followed by one or more appointments under Article 51 to restore the correct proportions.
60. to 64. Not used.

TERM OF OFFICE

65. The term of office for any Governor shall be four years, save that this time limit shall not apply to the Principal, Subject to remaining eligible to be a particular type of Governor, any Governor may be re-appointed or re-elected.

RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL

66. A Governor shall cease to hold office if he resigns his office by notice to the Academy Trust (but only if at least three Governors will remain in office when the notice of resignation is to take effect).
67. A Governor shall cease to hold office if he is removed by the person or persons who appointed him. This Article does not apply in respect of a Parent Governor.
68. Where a Governor resigns his office or is removed from office, the Governor or, where he is removed from office, those removing him, shall give written notice thereof to the Clerk.

68A. Not used.

DISQUALIFICATION OF GOVERNORS

69. No person shall be qualified to be a Governor unless he is aged 18 or over at the date of his election or appointment. No current pupil of the Academy shall be a Governor.
70. A Governor shall cease to hold office if he becomes incapable by reason of illness or injury of managing or administering his own affairs.
71. A Governor shall cease to hold office if he is absent without the permission of the Governors from all their meetings held within a period of six months and the Governors resolve that his office be vacated.
72. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Governor if:
- (a) his estate has been sequestrated and the sequestration has not been discharged, annulled or reduced; or
 - (b) he is the subject of a bankruptcy restrictions order or an interim order.

73. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Governor at any time when he is subject to a disqualification order or a disqualification undertaking under the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 or to an order made under section 429(2)(b) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (failure to pay under county court administration order).
74. A Governor shall cease to hold office if he ceases to be a Governor by virtue of any provision in the Companies Act 2006 or is disqualified from acting as a trustee by virtue of section 178 of the Charities Act 2011 (or any statutory re-enactment or modification of that provision).
75. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Governor if he has been removed from the office of charity trustee or trustee for a charity by an order made by the Charity Commission or the High Court on the grounds of any misconduct or mismanagement in the administration of the charity for which he was responsible or to which he was privy, or which he by his conduct contributed to or facilitated.
76. A person shall be disqualified from holding or from continuing to hold office as a Governor at any time when he is:
- (a) unwilling to give the undertaking required pursuant to Article 45A when requested in writing to provide this by the Foundation Members,
 - (b) a person who has previously been disqualified from being a governor of a Church of England designated school
77. Not used.
78. A person shall be disqualified from holding or continuing to hold office as a Governor where he has, at any time, been convicted of any criminal offence, excluding any that have been spent under the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 as amended, and excluding any offence for which the maximum sentence is a fine or a lesser sentence except where a person has been convicted of any offence which falls under section 178 of the Charities Act 2011.
79. After the Academy has opened, a person shall be disqualified from holding or

continuing to hold office as a Governor if he has not provided to the chairman of the Governors a criminal records certificate at an enhanced disclosure level under section 113B of the Police Act 1997. In the event that the certificate discloses any information which would in the opinion of either the chairman or the Principal confirm their unsuitability to work with children that person shall be disqualified. If a dispute arises as to whether a person shall be disqualified, a referral shall be made to the Secretary of State to determine the matter. The determination of the Secretary of State shall be final.

80. Where, by virtue of these Articles a person becomes disqualified from holding, or continuing to hold office as a Governor; and he is, or is proposed, to become such a Governor, he shall upon becoming so disqualified give written notice of that fact to the Clerk.

81. Articles 69 to 80 and Articles 98 to 99 also apply to any member of any committee of the Governors who is not a Governor.

CLERK TO THE GOVERNORS

82. The Clerk shall be appointed by the Governors for such term, at such remuneration and upon such conditions as they may think fit; and any Clerk so appointed may be removed by them. The Clerk shall not be a Governor or a Principal. Notwithstanding this Article, the Governors may, where the Clerk fails to attend a meeting of theirs, appoint any one of their number or any other person to act as Clerk for the purposes of that meeting.

CHAIRMAN AND VICE-CHAIRMAN OF THE GOVERNORS

83. The Governors shall for each school year elect a chairman and a vice-chairman from among their number. A Governor who is employed by the Academy Trust shall not be eligible for election as chairman or vice-chairman.

84. Subject to Article 85, the chairman or vice-chairman shall hold office as such until the start of the first meeting of the Governors in the following school year.

85. The chairman or vice-chairman may at any time resign his office by giving notice in writing to the Clerk. The chairman or vice-chairman shall cease to hold office if:

- (a) he ceases to be a Governor;
 - (b) he is employed by the Academy Trust;
 - (c) he is removed from office in accordance with these Articles; or
 - (d) in the case of the vice-chairman, he is elected in accordance with these Articles to fill a vacancy in the office of chairman.
86. Where by reason of any of the matters referred to in Article 85, a vacancy arises in the office of chairman or vice-chairman, the Governors shall at their next meeting elect one of their number to fill that vacancy until the start of the first meeting of the Governors in the following school year.
87. Where the chairman is absent from any meeting or there is at the time a vacancy in the office of the chairman, the vice-chairman shall act as the chair for the purposes of the meeting.
88. Where in the circumstances referred to in Article 87 the vice-chairman is also absent from the meeting or there is at the time a vacancy in the office of vice-chairman, the Governors shall elect one of their number to act as a chairman for the purposes of that meeting, provided that the Governor elected shall not be a person who is employed by the Academy Trust.
89. The Clerk shall act as chairman during that part of any meeting at which the chairman is elected.
90. Any election of the chairman or vice-chairman which is contested shall be held by secret ballot.
91. The Governors may remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office in accordance with these Articles.
92. A resolution to remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office which is passed at a meeting of the Governors shall not have effect unless:
- (a) it is confirmed by a resolution passed at a second meeting of the Governors held not less than fourteen days after the first meeting; and

(b) the matter of the chairman's or vice-chairman's removal from office is specified as an item of business on the agenda for each of those meetings.

93. Before the Governors resolve at the relevant meeting on whether to confirm the resolution to remove the chairman or vice-chairman from office, the Governor or Governors proposing his removal shall at that meeting state their reasons for doing so and the chairman or vice-chairman shall be given an opportunity to make a statement in response.

POWERS OF GOVERNORS

94. Subject to provisions of the Companies Act 2006, the Articles and to any directions given by special resolution, the business of the Academy Trust shall be managed by the Governors who may exercise all the powers of the Academy Trust. No alteration of the Articles and no such direction shall invalidate any prior act of the Governors which would have been valid if that alteration had not been made or that direction had not been given. The powers given by this Article shall not be limited by any special power given to the Governors by the Articles and a meeting of Governors at which a quorum is present may exercise all the powers exercisable by the Governors.

95. In addition to all powers hereby expressly conferred upon them and without detracting from the generality of their powers under the Articles the Governors shall have the following powers, namely:

(a) to expend the funds of the Academy Trust in such manner as they shall consider most beneficial for the achievement of the Object and to invest in the name of the Academy Trust such part of the funds as they may see fit and to direct the sale or transposition of any such investments and to expend the proceeds of any such sale in furtherance of the Object; and

(b) to enter into contracts on behalf of the Academy Trust.

96. In the exercise of their powers and functions, the Governors may consider any advice given by the Principal and any other executive officer.

97. Any bank account in which any money of the Academy Trust is deposited shall be operated by the Governors in the name of the Academy Trust. All cheques and orders

for the payment of money from such an account shall be signed by at least two signatories authorised by the Governors.

CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

98. Any Governor who has or can have any direct or indirect duty or personal interest (including but not limited to any Personal Financial Interest) which conflicts or may conflict with his duties as a Governor shall disclose that fact to the Governors as soon as he becomes aware of it. A Governor must absent himself from any discussions of the Governors in which it is possible that a conflict will arise between his duty to act solely in the interests of the Academy Trust and any duty or personal interest (including but not limited to any Personal Financial Interest).
99. For the purpose of Article 98, a Governor has a Personal Financial Interest in the employment or remuneration of, or the provision of any other benefit to, that Governor as permitted by and as defined by Articles 6.5 - 6.10.

THE MINUTES

100. The minutes of the proceedings of a meeting of the Governors shall be drawn up and entered into a book kept for the purpose by the person acting as Clerk for the purposes of the meeting; and shall be signed (subject to the approval of the Governors) at the same or next subsequent meeting by the person acting as chairman thereof. The minutes shall include a record of:
- (a) all appointments of officers made by the Governors; and
 - (b) all proceedings at meetings of the Academy Trust and of the Governors and of committees of Governors including the names of the Governors present at each such meeting.

COMMITTEES

101. Subject to these Articles, the Governors may establish any committee. Subject to these Articles, the constitution, membership and proceedings of any committee shall be determined by the Governors. The establishment, terms of reference, constitution and membership of any committee of the Governors shall be reviewed at least once in

every twelve months. The membership of any committee of the Governors may include persons who are not Governors, provided that a majority of members of any such committee shall be Governors. The Governors may determine that some or all of the members of a committee who are not Governors shall be entitled to vote in any proceedings of the committee. No vote on any matter shall be taken at a meeting of a committee of the Governors unless the majority of members of the committee present are Governors.

DELEGATION

102. The Governors may delegate to any Governor, committee, the Principal or any other holder of an executive office, such of their powers or functions as they consider desirable to be exercised by them. Any such delegation may be made subject to any conditions the Governors may impose and may be revoked or altered.
103. Where any power or function of the Governors is exercised by any committee, any Governor, Principal or any other holder of an executive office, that person or committee shall report to the Governors in respect of any action taken or decision made with respect to the exercise of that power or function at the meeting of the Governors immediately following the taking of the action or the making of the decision.

PRINCIPAL AND STAFF

104. The Governors shall appoint the Principal. In relation to such appointment, the Governors (after having consulted the Diocesan Director of Education and having regard to the Object) may appoint a Principal having regard to that person's ability and fitness to preserve and develop the religious character of the Academy. The Governors shall determine at the time whether the Principal is to be a Reserved Teacher. The Governors may delegate such powers and functions as they consider are required by the Principal for the internal organisation, management and control of the Academy (including the implementation of all policies approved by the Governors and for the direction of the teaching and curriculum at the Academy).
- 104A. In appointing staff other than the Principal the Governors shall use their powers further to the Funding Agreement (being powers equivalent to the powers of Voluntary Controlled schools as set out sections 58 - 60 of the Schools Standards and

Framework Act 1998):

- (a) so as to ensure that at least two Reserved Teachers (although the Principal may be one of the two) are appointed; and
- (b) having regard to their entitlement under the Funding Agreement to appoint up to one fifth of staff as Reserved Teachers.

MEETINGS OF THE GOVERNORS

105. Subject to these Articles, the Governors may regulate their proceedings as they think fit.

106. The Governors shall hold at least three meetings in every school year. Meetings of the Governors shall be convened by the Clerk. In exercising his functions under this Article the Clerk shall comply with any direction:

- (a) given by the Governors; or
- (b) given by the chairman of the Governors or, in his absence or where there is a vacancy in the office of chairman, the vice-chairman of the Governors, so far as such direction is not inconsistent with any direction given as mentioned in (a).

107. Any three Governors may, by notice in writing given to the Clerk, requisition a meeting of the Governors; and it shall be the duty of the Clerk to convene such a meeting as soon as is reasonably practicable.

108. Each Governor shall be given at least seven clear days before the date of a meeting:

- (a) notice in writing thereof, signed by the Clerk, and sent to each Governor at the address provided by each Governor from time to time; and
- (b) a copy of the agenda for the meeting;

provided that where the chairman or, in his absence or where there is a vacancy in the office of chairman, the vice-chairman, so determines on the ground that there are matters demanding urgent consideration, it shall be sufficient if the written notice of a meeting, and the copy of the agenda thereof are given within such shorter period as he

directs.

109. The convening of a meeting and the proceedings conducted thereat shall not be invalidated by reason of any individual not having received written notice of the meeting or a copy of the agenda thereof.
110. A resolution to rescind or vary a resolution carried at a previous meeting of the Governors shall not be proposed at a meeting of the Governors unless the consideration of the rescission or variation of the previous resolution is a specific item of business on the agenda for that meeting.
111. A meeting of the Governors shall be terminated forthwith if:
 - (a) the Governors so resolve; or
 - (b) the number of Governors present ceases to constitute a quorum for a meeting of the Governors in accordance with Article 114, subject to Article 116.
112. Where in accordance with Article 111 a meeting is not held or is terminated before all the matters specified as items of business on the agenda for the meeting have been disposed of, a further meeting shall be convened by the Clerk as soon as is reasonably practicable, but in any event within seven days of the date on which the meeting was originally to be held or was so terminated.
113. Where the Governors resolve in accordance with Article 111 to adjourn a meeting before all the items of business on the agenda have been disposed of, the Governors shall before doing so determine the time and date at which a further meeting is to be held for the purposes of completing the consideration of those items, and they shall direct the Clerk to convene a meeting accordingly.
114. Subject to Article 116 the quorum for a meeting of the Governors, and any vote on any matter thereat, shall be any three Governors, or, where greater, any one third (rounded up to a whole number) of the total number of Governors holding office at the date of the meeting.
115. The Governors may act notwithstanding any vacancies in their number, but, if the numbers of Governors is less than the number fixed as the quorum, the continuing

Governors may act only for the purpose of filling vacancies or of calling a general meeting.

116. The quorum for the purposes of:

- (a) appointing a parent Governor under Article 57;
- (b) any vote on the removal of a Governor in accordance with Article 67;
- (c) any vote on the removal of the chairman of the Governors in accordance with Article 91,

shall be any two-thirds (rounded up to a whole number) of the persons who are at the time Governors entitled to vote on those respective matters.

117. Subject to these Articles, every question to be decided at a meeting of the Governors shall be determined by a majority of the votes of the Governors present and voting on the question. Every Governor shall have one vote.

118. Subject to Articles 114-116, where there is an equal division of votes, the chairman of the meeting shall have a casting vote in addition to any other vote he may have.

119. The proceedings of the Governors shall not be invalidated by

- (a) any vacancy among their number; or
- (b) any defect in the election, appointment or nomination of any Governor.

120. A resolution in writing, signed by all the Governors entitled to receive notice of a meeting of Governors or of a committee of Governors, shall be valid and effective as if it had been passed at a meeting of Governors or (as the case may be) a committee of Governors duly convened and held. Such a resolution may consist of several documents in the same form, each signed by one or more of the Governors.

121. Subject to Article 122, the Governors shall ensure that a copy of:

- (a) the agenda for every meeting of the Governors;
- (b) the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the

person acting as chairman of that meeting;

- (c) the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
- (d) any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting,

are, as soon as is reasonably practicable, made available at the Academy to persons wishing to inspect them.

122. There may be excluded from any item required to be made available in pursuance of Article 121, any material relating to:

- (a) a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at the Academy;
- (b) a named pupil at, or candidate for admission to, the Academy; and
- (c) any matter which, by reason of its nature, the Governors are satisfied should remain confidential.

123. Any Governor shall be able to participate in meetings of the Governors by telephone or video conference provided that:

- (a) he has given notice of his intention to do so detailing the telephone number on which he can be reached and/or appropriate details of the video conference suite from which he shall be taking part at the time of the meeting at least 48 hours before the meeting; and
- (b) the Governors have access to the appropriate equipment if after all reasonable efforts it does not prove possible for the person to participate by telephone or video conference the meeting may still proceed with its business provided it is otherwise quorate.

PATRONS AND HONORARY OFFICERS

124. The Governors may from time to time appoint any person whether or not a Member of the Academy Trust to be a patron of the Academy Trust or to hold any honorary office and may determine for what period he is to hold such office.

THE SEAL

125. The seal, if any, shall only be used by the authority of the Governors or of a committee of Governors authorised by the Governors. The Governors may determine who shall sign any instrument to which the seal is affixed and unless otherwise so determined it shall be signed by a Governor and by the Clerk or by a second Governor.

ACCOUNTS

126. Accounts shall be prepared in accordance with the relevant Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Academy Trust was a non-exempt charity and Parts 15 and 16 of the Companies Act 2006 and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

ANNUAL REPORT

127. The Governors shall prepare its Annual Report in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Academy Trust was a non-exempt charity and shall file these with the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

ANNUAL RETURN

128. The Governors shall comply with their obligations under Part 24 of the Companies Act 2006 (or any statutory re-enactment or modification of that Act) with regard to the preparation of an annual return to the Registrar of Companies and in accordance with the Statement of Recommended Practice as if the Academy Trust was a non-exempt charity and to the Secretary of State and the Principal Regulator by 31 December each Academy Financial Year.

NOTICES

129. Any notice to be given to or by any person pursuant to these Articles (other than a notice calling a meeting of the Governors) shall be in writing or shall be given using electronic communications to an address for the time being notified for that purpose to the person giving the notice. In these Articles, "address" in relation to electronic communications, includes a number or address used for the purposes of such

communications.

130. A notice may be given by the Academy Trust to a Member either personally or by sending it by post in a prepaid envelope addressed to the Member at his registered address or by leaving it at that address or by giving it using electronic communications to an address for the time being notified to the Academy Trust by the Member. A Member whose registered address is not within the United Kingdom and who gives to the Academy Trust an address within the United Kingdom at which notices may be given to him, or an address to which notices may be sent using electronic communications, shall be entitled to have notices given to him at that address, but otherwise no such Member shall be entitled to receive any notice from the Academy Trust.
131. A Member present, either in person or by proxy, at any meeting of the Academy Trust shall be deemed to have received notice of the meeting and, where necessary, of the purposes for which it was called.
132. Proof that an envelope containing a notice was properly addressed, prepaid and posted shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given. Proof that a notice contained in an electronic communication was sent in accordance with guidance issued by the Institute of Chartered Secretaries and Administrators shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given. A notice shall be deemed to be given at the expiration of 48 hours after the envelope containing it was posted or, in the case of a notice contained in an electronic communication, at the expiration of 48 hours after the time it was sent.

INDEMNITY

133. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006 every Governor or other officer or auditor of the Academy Trust shall be indemnified out of the assets of the Academy Trust against any liability incurred by him in that capacity in defending any proceedings, whether civil or criminal, in which judgment is given in favour or in which he is acquitted or in connection with any application in which relief is granted to him by the court from liability for negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the affairs of the Academy Trust.

RULES

134. The Governors may from time to time make such rules or bye laws as they may deem necessary or expedient or convenient for the proper conduct and management of the Academy Trust, and in particular but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, they may by such rules or bye laws regulate:
- (a) the setting aside of the whole or any part or parts of the Academy Trust's premises at any particular time or times or for any particular purpose or purposes;
 - (b) the procedure at meetings of the Governors and committees of the Governors in so far as such procedure is not regulated by the Articles; and
 - (c) generally, all such matters as are commonly the subject matter of Company rules.
135. The Academy Trust in general meeting shall have power to alter, add or to repeal the rules or bye laws but only with the consent of the Diocesan Board of Education and the Governors shall adopt such means as they think sufficient to bring to the notice of Members of the Academy Trust all such rules or bye laws, which shall be binding on all Members of the Academy Trust. Provided that no rule or bye law shall be inconsistent with, or shall affect or repeal anything contained in these Articles.

AVOIDING INFLUENCED COMPANY STATUS

136. Notwithstanding the number of Members from time to time, the maximum aggregate number of votes exercisable by Local Authority Associated Persons shall never exceed 19.9% of the total number of votes exercisable by Members in general meeting and the votes of the other Members having a right to vote at the meeting will be increased on a pro-rata basis.
137. No person who is a Local Authority Associated Person may be appointed as a Governor if, once the appointment had taken effect, the number of Governors who are Local Authority Associated Persons would represent 20% or more of the total number of Governors. Upon any resolution put to the Governors, the maximum aggregate number of votes exercisable by any Governors who are Local Authority Associated

Persons shall represent a maximum of 19.9% of the total number of votes cast by the Governors on such a resolution and the votes of the other Governors having a right to vote at the meeting will be increased on a pro-rata basis.

138. No person who is a Local Authority Associated Person is eligible to be appointed to the office of Governor unless his appointment to such office is authorised by the local authority to which he is associated.
139. If at the time of either his becoming a Member of the Academy Trust or his first appointment to office as a Governor any Member or Governor was not a Local Authority Associated Person but later becomes so during his membership or tenure as a Governor he shall be deemed to have immediately resigned his membership and/or resigned from his office as a Governor as the case may be.
140. If at any time the number of Governors or Members who are also Local Authority Associated Persons would (but for Articles 136 to 139 inclusive) represent 20% or more of the total number of Governors or Members (as the case may be) then a sufficient number of the Governors or Members (as the case may be) who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall be deemed to have resigned as Governors or Members (as the case may be) immediately before the occurrence of such an event to ensure that at all times the number of such Governors or Members (as the case may be) is never equal to or greater than 20% of the total number of Governors or Members (as the case may be). Governors or Members (as the case may be) who are Local Authority Associated Persons shall be deemed to have resigned in order of their appointment date the most recently appointed resigning first.
141. The Members will each notify the Academy Trust and each other if at any time they believe that the Academy Trust or any of its subsidiaries has become subject to the influence of a local authority (as described in section 69 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989).

**THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
& COMPANIES (REGISTRATION) REGULATIONS 2008 (SI 2008/3014)**

A COMPANY NOT HAVING A SHARE CAPITAL

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION

OF

Bengeworth CE Academy

**THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
& COMPANIES (REGISTRATION) REGULATIONS 2008 (SI 2008/3014)**

SCHEDULE 2

A COMPANY NOT HAVING A SHARE CAPITAL

Regulation 2(b)

MEMORANDUM OF ASSOCIATION OF

Bengeworth CE Academy

Each subscriber to this memorandum of association wishes to form a company under the Companies Act 2006 and agrees to become a member of the company.

Name of each subscriber Authentication by each subscriber

Name: WORCESTER DIOCESAN ACADEMIES TRUST

Signature:

Name: LAURENCE FLETCHER Signature:

Name: ROBERT BANKS Signature:

Name: CAROLE THOMSON Signature:

Dated

18 April 2013v2

Annex B

REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ADMISSION OF PUPILS TO BENGEWORTH CE ACADEMY

GENERAL

1. This annex may be amended in writing at any time by agreement between the Secretary of State and the Academy Trust.

2. Except as provided in paragraphs 2A to 2B below the Academy Trust will act in accordance with, and will ensure that an Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, all relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code, and the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education ("the Codes") as they apply at any given time to maintained schools and with equalities law and the law on admissions as they apply to maintained schools. For this purpose, reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" shall be deemed to be references to the governing body of the Academy Trust.

2A The Academy Trust is permitted to determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in accordance with the School Admissions Code) that give priority for admission (but not above looked after children and previously looked after children¹) to other children attracting the pupil premium, including the service premium ('the pupil premium admission criterion'). Where an Academy Trust exercises this freedom it will provide information in its admission arrangements of eligibility for the premiums.

2B For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:

- any personal details about their financial status; or
- whether parents are serving in the armed forces (of any nation), stationed in England, and exercising parental care and responsibility for the child in question.

3. Notwithstanding the generality of paragraph 2 of this Annex, the Academy Trust will participate in the co-ordinated admission arrangements operated by the Local Authority (LA) and the local Fair Access Protocol.

4. Notwithstanding any provision in this Annex, the Secretary of State may:

- (a) direct the Academy Trust to admit a named pupil to Bengeworth CE Academy on application from an LA. This will include complying

¹ As defined in the School Admissions Code.

with a School Attendance Order². Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust;

- (b) direct the Academy Trust to admit a named pupil to Bengeworth CE Academy if the Academy Trust has failed to act in accordance with this Annex or has otherwise failed to comply with applicable admissions and equalities legislation or the provisions of the Codes;
- (c) direct the Academy Trust to amend its admission arrangements where they fail to comply with the School Admissions Code or the School Admission Appeals Code.

4A Bengeworth CE Academy is a Church of England Academy in the Diocese of Worcester.

5. The Academy Trust shall ensure that parents and 'relevant children'³ will have the right of appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Academy Trust. The Independent Appeal Panel will be independent of the Academy Trust. The arrangements for appeals will comply with the School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education as it applies to Foundation and Voluntary Aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

Relevant Area

6. Subject to paragraph 7, the meaning of "Relevant Area" for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the local authority for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

7. If the Academy does not consider the relevant area determined by the local authority for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Academy and the LA in which the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.

² Local authorities are able to issue school attendance orders if a child is not attending school. These are legally binding upon parents. Such an order might, for instance, be appropriate where a child has a place at an Academy but his/her parents are refusing to send him/her to school. The order will require a parent to ensure his/her child attends a specified school.

³ relevant children' means:

- a) in the case of appeals for entry to a sixth form, the child, and;
- b) in any other case, children who are above compulsory school age, or will be above compulsory school age by the time they start to receive education at the school.

Requirement to admit pupils

8. Pupils on roll in any predecessor maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at any predecessor school will be admitted.

9. The Academy will:

- a. subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State in relation to a named pupil, admit all pupils with a statement of special educational needs naming the Academy;
- b. determine admission oversubscription criteria that give highest priority to looked after children and previously looked after children, in accordance with the relevant provisions of the School Admissions Code.

Oversubscription criteria, admission number, consultation, determination and objections.

10. The Academy admission arrangements will include oversubscription criteria, and an admission number for each relevant age group⁴. The Academy will consult on its admission arrangements and determine them in line with the requirements within the School Admissions Code.

11. The Office of the School's Adjudicator (OSA) will consider objections to the Academy's admission arrangements⁵. The Academy Trust should therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy's admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA.

12. A determination of an objection by the OSA will be binding upon the Academy and the Academy Trust will make appropriate changes as quickly as possible.

⁴ 'Relevant age group' means 'normal point of admission to the school, for example, year R, Year7 and Year 12.

⁵ The OSA has no jurisdiction to consider objections against the agreed variation from the Codes set out in paragraphs 2A and 2B.

ANNEX C

Arrangements for pupils with Special Educational Needs ('SEN') and disabilities at Bengeworth CE Academy

Duties in relation to pupils with SEN

1. The Governing Body of the Academy Trust must comply with all of the duties imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained schools in:
 - Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 as amended from time to time¹;
 - The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 as amended from time to time;
 - The Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2008 as amended from time to time².
2. Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement, the Secretary of State may (whether following a complaint made to him or otherwise) direct the Academy Trust to comply with an obligation described in this Annex where the Academy Trust has failed to comply with any such obligation.
3. Where a child who has SEN is being educated in the Academy, those concerned with making special educational provision for the child must secure that the child engages in the activities of the school together with children who do not have SEN, so far as is reasonably practicable and is compatible with:
 - (a) the child receiving the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for,
 - (b) the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated, and
 - (c) the efficient use of resources.
4. In addition to complying with the duties imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained schools set out in The Education (Special Educational Needs) (Information) Regulations 1999 (as amended from time to time), the Academy Trust must ensure that the Academy's website includes details of the implementation of its policy for pupils with special educational needs; the arrangements for the admission of disabled pupils; the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being treated less favourably than other pupils; and the facilities provided to assist access to the Academy by disabled pupils (disabled pupils

¹ Currently these duties are in sections 313 (Duty to have regard to the Special Educational Needs Code of Practice 2001); 317 (Duties in relation to pupils with special educational needs), 317A (Duty to advise parents that special educational provision is being made); and 324(5)(b) (Duty to admit the child where a school is named in the statement).

² These Regulations are amended by The Education (Special Educational Needs Co-ordinators) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2009 (SI 2009 No 1387).

meaning pupils who are disabled for the purposes of the Equality Act 2010³).

Admissions

5. The Academy Trust must ensure that pupils with SEN are admitted on an equal basis with others in accordance with its admissions policy.
6. Where a local authority ("LA") proposes to name the Academy in a statement of SEN made in accordance with section 324 of the Education Act 1996, it must give the Academy Trust written notice that it so proposes. Within 15 days of receipt of the LA's notice that it proposes to name the Academy in a statement, the Academy Trust must consent to being named, except where admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for other children; and where no reasonable steps may be made to secure compatibility. In deciding whether a child's inclusion would be incompatible with the efficient education of other children, the Academy Trust must have regard to the relevant guidance issued by the Secretary of State to maintained schools.
7. If the Academy Trust determines that admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education, it must, within 15 days of receipt of the LA's notice, notify the LA in writing that it does not agree that the Academy should be named in the pupil's statement. Such notice must set out all the facts and matters the Academy relies upon in support of its contention that: (a) admitting the child would be incompatible with efficiently educating other children; and (b) the Academy Trust cannot take reasonable steps to secure this compatibility.
8. After service by the Academy Trust on the LA of any notice (further to paragraph 7 above) stating that it does not agree with the LA's proposal that the Academy be named, the Academy Trust must seek to establish from the LA, as soon as is reasonably practicable, whether or not the LA agrees with the Academy Trust. If the LA notifies the Academy that it does not agree with the Academy Trust's response, and names the Academy in the child's statement, the Academy Trust must admit the child to the school on the date specified in the statement or on the date specified by the LA.
9. Where the Academy Trust considers that the Academy should not have been named in a child's statement, they may ask the Secretary of State to determine that the LA has acted unreasonably in naming the Academy and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider.
10. The Secretary of State's determination shall, subject only to any right of appeal which any parent or guardian of the child may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability), be final.
11. If a parent or guardian of a child in respect of whom a statement is

³ For the meaning of 'disabled', see section 6 of the Equality Act 2010.

maintained by the local authority appeals to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) either against the naming of the Academy in the child's SEN statement or asking the Tribunal to name the Academy, then the decision of the Tribunal on any such appeal shall be binding and shall, if different from that of the Secretary of State under paragraph 9 above, be substituted for the Secretary of State's decision.

12. Where the Academy, the Secretary of State or the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) have determined that it should be named, the Academy Trust shall admit the child to the Academy notwithstanding any provision of Annex B to this agreement.

Schedule B
Master Funding Agreement



Department
for Education

Academy and free school: master funding agreement Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust

December 2014 version

Contents

SUMMARY SHEET	4
1. INTRODUCTION	5
Definitions of types of Academies:.....	5
Other defined terms:	6
General Obligations of the Academy Trust.....	10
Governance	12
2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMIES.....	14
Length of school day and year	14
Teachers and staff.....	14
School meals	15
Pupil Premium.....	16
Charging.....	17
Exclusions	17
Curriculum.....	18
Assessment	19
3. GRANT FUNDING	21
Recurrent Expenditure Grants	21
Capital Grant	22
General Annual Grant (GAG)	23
Earmarked Annual Grant (EAG).....	26
Arrangements for paying GAG and EAG.....	26
Other relevant funding	27
4. FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS	27
General.....	27
Application of the Academies Financial Handbook	29
Budgeting for funds	29
Carrying forward of funds	30
Annual accounts and audit.....	31
Keeping financial records	32
Access to financial records	32
Acquiring and disposing of Publicly Funded Assets	32
Retention of proceeds from the disposal of capital assets.....	33

Transactions outside the usual planned range	33
Borrowing	34
5. COMPLAINTS	34
6. TERMINATION	35
Termination by either party	36
Change of Control of the Academy Trust	38
7. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS	39
Information	39
Access by the Secretary of State's Officers	39
Notices	40
Contractual	41

SUMMARY SHEET

Information about the Academy Trust:

Name of Academy Trust	Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust
Address	King's Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU
Company Number	08943457
Contact details for the Chair of Charity Trustees	King's Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU

Please confirm whether additional clauses have been included (e.g. PFI clauses which will be supplied by your project lead if needed)

Descriptor	Clause No.	Applied	Not used

1. INTRODUCTION

Introduction and definitions

- 1.1 This Agreement is between the Secretary of State for Education (the “**Secretary of State**”) and Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust (the “**Academy Trust**”), and is an academy agreement as defined by section 1 of the Academies Act 2010.
- 1.2 The Academy Trust is a company limited by guarantee incorporated in England and Wales with company number 08943457. The Academy Trust is a charity and its directors are the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust.
- 1.3 In order for the Academy Trust to establish and run a number of Academies in England, according to the provisions of the Academies Act 2010, and in order for the Secretary of State to make payments to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust must meet the requirements in this Agreement and in each **Supplemental Agreement** that has been entered into by the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State in respect of each Academy.
- 1.4 In this Agreement, and (except as expressly provided otherwise) in each Supplemental Agreement, the capitalised words and expressions listed below will have the following meanings:-

Definitions of types of Academies:

An “**Academy**” is a school or educational institution established and run in accordance with the Academies Act 2010, and where this Agreement refers collectively to “**Academies**” run by the Academy Trust, this may include any of the following types of school or educational institution:

A “**Free School**” means an Academy which is a new educational institution within the meaning of section 9(1)(a) of the Academies Act 2010.

A “**Mainstream Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the requirements set out in section 1A(1) of the Academies Act 2010.

An “**Alternative Provision Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the requirements set out in section 1C(1) of the Academies Act 2010.

A “**Special Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the criteria set out in section 1A(2) of the Academies Act 2010.

A “**Sponsored Academy**” will be (unless otherwise stated) a Mainstream Academy which is established pursuant to an Academy Order under section 4 of the Academies Act 2010, which will be designated as a Sponsored Academy within the Supplemental Agreement applicable to that Academy, and as such certain conditions may apply to it.

“**Studio School**” means a type of Free School, principally for pupils and students aged between 14 and 19, which places an emphasis on such pupils and students obtaining employability skills through project-based learning.

“**University Technical College**” means a type of Free School, principally for pupils and students aged between 14 and 19, which provides technical education with the emphasis on a particular industry or scientific sector.

A “**16-19 Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the requirements set out in section 1B(1) of the Academies Act 2010.

Other defined terms:

“**16-19 Funding Guidance**” means the guidance published by the EFA and amended from time to time, on behalf of the Secretary of State.

“**Academies Financial Handbook**” means the document with that title published by the EFA and amended from time to time, on behalf of the Secretary of State.

“**Academy Financial Year**” means the year from 1 September to 31 August, or a different period notified in writing by the Secretary of State.

“**Articles**” means the Academy Trust’s articles of association.

“Business day” means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or any day which is a bank holiday with the meaning given to that expression in the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971.

“Charity Trustees” means the directors of the Academy Trust who are responsible for the general control and management of the administration of the Academy Trust.

“Chief Inspector” means Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education, Children’s Services and Skills.

“Commissioner” means LAs and/or schools referring pupils to an Alternative Provision Academy for admission under the legal powers set out in the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

“Control” means the power of an organisation or individual (‘A’) to ensure that the affairs of a another organisation are conducted in accordance with A’s wishes, whether through share ownership or voting power, by agreement, because of powers conferred by articles of association or any other document, or otherwise; and

“Controls” will be construed accordingly.

“DfE” and the expression **“Department”** means the Department for Education or any successor Department which has responsibility for schools”

“EFA” means the Education Funding Agency.

“Guidance” means guidance issued by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, as amended from time to time.

“Independent School Standards” means the independent school standards prescribed under section 157 of the Education Act 2002.

“LA” means a local authority.

“Local Governing Body” means the committee (if any) established by the Academy Trust in relation to an Academy or Academies, within the Academy Trust, in accordance with the Articles.

“Parents” means parents or guardians.

“Predecessor School” means the school which the Academy in question replaced, where applicable.

“Publicly Funded Assets” means (a) assets or property funded wholly or partly using payments made by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, and (b) publicly funded land as defined in paragraph 22(3) of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

“Pupil Premium” means an amount equivalent to the pupil premium as defined in the School and Early Years Finance (England) Regulations 2013

“Pupil Referral Unit” means any school established in England and maintained by an LA which is specially organised to provide education for children falling within section 19(1) of the Education Act 1996.

Any reference to **“Secretary of State”** includes a reference to the EFA acting on the Secretary of State’s behalf.

“Secretary of State’s consent” means the Secretary of State’s specific, prior written consent, which will not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

“SEN” means Special Educational Needs and the expressions **“special educational needs”** and **“special educational provision”** have the meaning set out in sections 20(1) and 21(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

“Start-up Period” has the meaning as defined in the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

“Supplemental Agreement” means an agreement supplemental to this Agreement for any Academy which the Academy Trust agrees to establish and maintain and the Secretary of State agrees to fund, which is substantially in the form of the supplemental funding agreement entered into by both parties at the time that this Agreement is signed.

“Teaching Staff” means teachers and the principal or head teacher employed at the Academy.

“Termination Notice” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, terminating this Agreement and each Supplemental Agreement on the date specified in the notice.

- 1.5 The Interpretation Act 1978 applies to this Agreement as it applies to an Act of Parliament.
- 1.6 A reference in this Agreement to any party or body includes its successors.
- 1.7 Any words following the terms ‘include’, ‘including’ or ‘in particular’ are by way of illustration, not limitation.
- 1.8 A reference in this Agreement to land includes any buildings or structures on the land.
- 1.9 A reference in this Agreement to pupils includes students at a 16-19 Academy.
- 1.10 Where any legislation, legal requirement or published guidance is referred to, unless otherwise stated, the following terms should be interpreted as follows:
 - a) “school” refers to the relevant Mainstream Academy, Alternative Provision Academy, Special Academy or Studio School, and “educational institution” refers, where the context so admits, to a 16-19 Academy;
 - b) the “head teacher” may refer to the Academy’s head teacher or principal;
 - c) references to the “governing body” or “responsible authorities” will be taken to refer to the Academy Trust; and
 - d) references to registered pupils will be treated as references to registered pupils at the Academy.
- 1.11 References in this Agreement or any Supplemental Agreement to any named legislation, legal requirement or published guidance should be taken to include any amendment to or replacement of it.

1.12 If any questions arise about how this Agreement should be interpreted, the answer will be decided by the Secretary of State, after discussion with the Academy Trust.

General Obligations of the Academy Trust

1.13 In order for the Academy Trust to establish and run independent schools and/or educational institutions in England, according to the terms of the Academies Act 2010, and in order for the Secretary of State to make payments to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust must meet the conditions and requirements set out in this Agreement, and in each Supplemental Agreement for an Academy for which payments are claimed. In particular, the Academy Trust must ensure the Academies it runs meet the applicable requirements as follows:

- a) for **Mainstream Academies**, those specified in Section 1A of the Academies Act 2010;
- b) for **Alternative Provision Academies**, those specified in Section 1C of the Academies Act 2010;
- c) for **16-19 Academies**, those specified in Section 1B of the Academies Act 2010;
- d) for **Special Academies**, those specified in section 1A(2) of the Academies Act 2010, and:
 - i. the Academy Trust must ensure special educational provision is made at each of the Special Academies for one or more categories of SEN. These categories may include, but are not limited to: Specific Learning Difficulties, Moderate Learning Difficulties, Severe Learning Difficulties, Profound and Multiple Learning Difficulties, Behaviour Emotional Social and Development Needs, Speech Language and Communication Needs, Autistic Spectrum Disorder, Visual Impairment, Hearing Impairment, Multi-Sensory Impairment, Physical Disability;

- ii. the Academy Trust may not refuse to admit a child whose statement of SEN names one of the Special Academies on the sole basis that some, or all, of the child's SEN do not feature in the categories referred to in clause 1.13(d)(i) of this agreement.
- iii. the Academy Trust must comply with all of the obligations imposed upon special academies by legislation, and with the obligations imposed upon the governing bodies of maintained special schools in Chapter 1 of Part 4 of the Education Act 1996.
- iv. the Academy Trust must ensure that each Special Academy's website includes details of the arrangements for the admission of disabled pupils; the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being treated less favourably than other pupils; the facilities provided to assist access to the Academy by disabled pupils; and the plan prepared by the Academy Trust under paragraph 3 of Schedule 10 to the Equality Act 2010. Disabled pupils in this paragraph mean pupils who are disabled for the purposes of the Equality Act 2010.

1.14 To the extent that it is compatible with the Academy Trust fulfilling its charitable purpose of advancing education in the United Kingdom for the public benefit, the Academy Trust must ensure that each of its Academies is at the heart of its community, promoting community cohesion and sharing facilities with other schools and/or other educational institutions and the wider community.

1.15 The Academy Trust must conduct its Academies within the terms and requirements of:

- a) the Articles;
- b) any legislation or legal requirement that applies to academies, including the Independent School Standards and legislation about meeting the needs of pupils with SEN and disabilities;

- c) the Academies Financial Handbook, as stated in clauses 4.6 to 4.8;
and
 - d) this Agreement, and any and all Supplemental Agreements.
- 1.16 The Academy Trust must, as soon as is reasonable, establish an appropriate mechanism for the receipt and management of donations for the purpose of its aims as specified in the Articles.
- 1.17 The Academy Trust must obtain the Secretary of State's consent before applying to have an Academy designated as a school with religious character. The Secretary of State may at his discretion refuse or consent to the Academy Trust making such an application.
- 1.18 Unless an Academy operated by the Academy Trust is designated as a school with a religious character under the Religious Character of Schools (Designation Procedure) (Independent Schools) (England) Regulations 2003, it agrees to be bound by the prohibition against discrimination in section 85 of the Equality Act 2010.
- 1.19 The Academy Trust is not required to publish information under this Agreement, or any Supplemental Agreement, if to do so would breach its obligations under the Data Protection Act 1998.
- 1.20 The Academy Trust must ensure that its Academies meet the needs of individual pupils, including pupils with SEN and disabilities.

Governance

- 1.21 The Academy Trust will be governed by a board comprising the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust (the "**Board of Charity Trustees**").
- 1.22 The Board of Charity Trustees must have regard to any Guidance on the governance of academy trusts.
- 1.23 The Academy Trust must ensure that it engages with the relevant Local Governing Body (if any) or representatives of each Academy, and that arrangements are in place for matters relating to the functioning of each

Academy to be brought to the attention of the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust.

- 1.24 The Academy Trust must provide to the Secretary of State the names of all new or replacement members of the Academy Trust, stating the date of their appointment and, where applicable, the name of the member they replaced as soon as is practicable and in any event within 14 days of their appointment.
- 1.25 The Academy Trust must not appoint any new or replacement members until it has first informed them, and they have agreed, that their names will be shared with the Secretary of State to enable him to assess their suitability.
- 1.26 If the Academy Trust establishes and maintains a Free School, it must, in addition to its obligations under clauses 1.24 and 1.25:
 - a) provide to the Secretary of State the names of all new or replacement Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust, stating whether they have been appointed or elected, the date of their appointment or election and, where applicable, the name of the Charity Trustees they replaced as soon as is practicable and in any event within 14 days of their appointment or election; and
 - b) not appoint or elect any new or replacement Charity Trustees until it has first informed them, and they have agreed, that their names will be shared with the Secretary of State to enable him to assess their suitability.
- 1.27 The Academy Trust must not amend or remove the provisions in its Articles relating to the appointment or election or the resignation or removal of Charity Trustees or members (“the Governance Articles”) without the Secretary of State’s consent.
- 1.28 Before any change to the Governance Articles is proposed the Academy Trust must give notice to the Secretary of State of:
 - a) the proposed amendment or removal; and;

b) the reason for it.

1.29 If the Secretary of State consents to the proposed changes, the Academy Trust shall approve any changes to the Articles as soon as reasonably practicable and provide the Secretary of State with a copy of the amended Articles and the resolution(s) approving them.

2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMIES

Length of school day and year

2.1 The length of the school day and year will be the responsibility of the Academy Trust and for the purpose of this paragraph "school" also means a **16 to 19 Academy**.

Teachers and staff

2.2 In complying with the Independent School Standards, the Academy Trust must require enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service ("DBS") certificates as appropriate for members of staff, supply staff, members of the Academy Trust, individual Charity Trustees and the chair of the Board of Charity Trustees.

2.3 The Academy Trust must promptly submit to the Secretary of State, on request, the information contained in any enhanced DBS certificate that it receives.

2.4 The Academy Trust must, where applicable, in respect of each of its Academies designate a member of staff at each Academy responsible for promoting the educational achievement of pupils at the Academy who are being looked after by an LA, and in doing so must comply with the law, regulations and guidance that apply to maintained schools.

2.5 Teachers' pay and conditions of service at the Academies are the responsibility of the Academy Trust.

2.6 The Academy Trust must ensure that all teachers employed in each Academy have access to the Teachers' Pension Scheme and, in so doing, must comply

with the requirements of the scheme and with Fair Deal for staff pensions guidance published by HM Treasury.

- 2.7 The Academy Trust must, in accordance with the Local Government Pension Scheme (Administration) Regulations 2008 and with Fair Deal for staff pensions guidance published by HM Treasury, ensure that all affected staff employed by the Academy Trust other than teachers have access to the Local Government Pension Scheme, unless an individual expressly chooses to opt out of the Scheme in accordance with the regulations.
- 2.8 Where a member of the Teaching Staff employed at an Academy applies for a teaching post at another academy, a maintained school or a further education institution, the Academy Trust must at the request of the board of governors or academy trust of that other educational institution:
- a) advise in writing whether or not, in the previous two years, there has been any formal capability considerations or proceedings for that teacher at the Academy or the Predecessor School;
 - b) give written details of the concerns which gave rise to any such consideration of that teacher's capability, the duration of the proceedings and their outcome.

School meals

- 2.9 Subject to clause 2.12, the Academy Trust must provide school lunches and free school lunches in accordance with the provisions of sections 512(3) and 512ZB(1) of the Education Act 1996 as if references in sections 512 and 512ZB to a local authority were to the Academy Trust and as if references to a school maintained by a local authority were to any of its Academies.
- 2.10 The Academy Trust must comply with school food standards legislation as if its Academies were maintained schools.
- 2.11 Where the Academy Trust provides milk to pupils, it must be provided free of charge to pupils who would be eligible for free milk if they were pupils at a maintained school.

2.12 Clauses 2.9 to 2.11 do not apply to 16-19 Academies. For **16-19 Academies**, the Academy Trust must comply with any Guidance in relation to free meals in the further education sector, as far as it applies to those Academies.

Pupil Premium

2.13 For all of its Academies eligible for Pupil Premium, and for each Financial Year, the Academy Trust must publish, on the Academy's website, information about:

- a) the amount of Pupil Premium allocation that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
- b) what it intends to spend the Pupil Premium allocation on;
- c) what it spent its Pupil Premium allocation on in the previous Academy Financial Year;
- d) the impact of the previous year's Pupil Premium allocation on educational attainment.

2.14 For all of its Academies eligible for Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium funding, and for each Academy Financial Year, the Academy Trust must publish, on the Academy's website, information about:

- a) the amount of Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
- b) what it intends to spend its Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant on;
- c) what it spent its Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant on in the previous Academy Financial Year;
- d) the impact of the previous year's Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant on educational attainment, and how that effect was assessed.

Charging

- 2.15 For all its Academies except 16 to 19 Academies, the Academy Trust must comply with sections 402, 450-457 and 459-462 of the Education Act 1996 with regard to public examinations, charging, providing information, inviting voluntary contributions and recovering civil debts, as if its Academies were maintained schools.
- 2.16 There must be no charge for admission to or attendance at any of the Academies, and the Academies will only charge pupils where the law allows maintained schools to charge.
- 2.17 Clause 2.16 does not prevent the Academy Trust receiving funds from an LA or a charity in respect of the admission and attendance of a pupil with SEN to an Academy.
- 2.18 Notwithstanding clause 2.16, the Academy Trust may charge people who are not registered pupils at one of its Academies for education or use of facilities.
- 2.19 Where an Academy provides a pupil with board and lodging, the Academy Trust must not charge the parent of that pupil more than the cost to the Academy Trust of providing the board and lodging, except as required by the Fees, Charges and Levies guidance in HM Treasury's publication 'Managing Public Money'.

Exclusions

- 2.20 In respect of **Mainstream Academies, and Special Academies which admit pupils without statements of SEN and Studio Schools**, the Academy Trust must, if asked to by an LA, enter into an agreement which has the effect that where:
- a) the Academy admits a pupil who has been permanently excluded from a maintained school, the Academy itself or another academy with whom the LA has a similar agreement; or
 - b) the Academy Trust permanently excludes a pupil from the Academy,

the arrangements for payment will be the same as if the Academy were a maintained school, under Regulations made under section 47 of the Schools Standards and Framework Act 1998.

Curriculum

- 2.21 The curriculum is the responsibility of the Academy Trust.
- 2.22 The Academy Trust must ensure that the curriculum provided in each Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 is balanced and broadly based. In respect of **Mainstream** and **Special Academies**, the Academy Trust must ensure that the curriculum includes English, mathematics and science. In respect of **Alternative Provision Academies** the Academy Trust must ensure that the curriculum includes English and mathematics.
- 2.23 The Academy Trust must publish information in relation to the current curriculum provision at each Academy on that Academy's website, including:
- a) the content of the curriculum;
 - b) its approach to the curriculum;
 - c) if applicable, the GCSE options and other Key Stage 4 qualifications offered by each Academy and, if applicable, any other qualifications offered by each Academy;
 - d) the names of any phonics or reading schemes in operation for Key Stage 1 if applicable; and
 - e) how parents (including parents of prospective pupils) and Commissioners (if applicable) can obtain further information about that Academy's curriculum.
- 2.24 The Academy Trust must not allow any view or theory to be taught as evidence-based if it is contrary to established scientific or historical evidence and explanations. This clause applies to all subjects taught at an Academy.

- 2.25 The Academy Trust must provide for the teaching of evolution as a comprehensive, coherent and extensively evidenced theory. In respect of any **Alternative Provision Academies** and **16-19 Academies**, the Academy Trust must do this where relevant to the curriculum.
- 2.26 The Academy Trust must ensure the Academy actively promotes the fundamental British values of democracy, the rule of law, individual liberty, and mutual respect and tolerance of those with different faiths and beliefs.
- 2.26A The Academy Trust must ensure the Academy promotes principles that support equality of opportunity for all.
- 2.27 The Academy Trust must ensure that careers guidance is provided at each of its Academies, in accordance with the requirements on maintained schools in the Education Act 1997.

Assessment

- 2.28 The Academy Trust must:
- a) ensure that pupils and students at each of its Academies are entered for examinations, in line with the requirements on maintained schools in section 402 of the Education Act 1996;
 - b) comply with the relevant Guidance, as it applies to maintained schools, in respect of each **Mainstream Academy**, each **Special Academy** and each **Studio School** to ensure that pupils take part in assessments, and in teacher assessments of pupils' performance; and must do so for each **Alternative Provision Academy** unless there are exceptional reasons to do otherwise;
 - c) ensure that students at each **16 to 19 Academy** take part in assessments of students' performance appropriate to the qualifications offered;
 - d) report on assessments as the Secretary of State requires, or provide any information on assessments, on the same basis that maintained schools are required to provide the information;

- e) for all Key Stages, allow monitoring and moderation of the Academy's assessment arrangements as required by the Secretary of State.

2.29 Unless specifically approved in writing by the Secretary of State, the Academy Trust must not use GAG to offer any course of education or training which leads to a qualification, if that qualification is not approved by the Secretary of State for the purpose of section 96 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.

2.30 Unless informed by the Secretary of State that alternative information must be published, the Academy Trust must ensure that the following information is published on the relevant Academy's website for each **Mainstream Academy**, for each **Alternative Provision Academy**, and where relevant for each **Special Academy**, and in respect of sub-paragraph b) where relevant for each **Studio School**:

- a) if applicable, the Academy's most recent Key Stage 2 results as published by the Secretary of State in the School Performance Tables:
 - i. "% achieving Level 4 or above in reading, writing and maths";
 - ii. "% making expected progress in reading", "% making expected progress in writing", and "% making expected progress in maths";
 - iii. in relation to reading, "% achieving Level 5 or above"; and
 - iv. in relation to writing, "% achieving Level 5 or above"; and
 - v. in relation to maths, "% achieving Level 5 or above";
- b) if applicable, the Academy's most recent Key Stage 4 results as published by the Secretary of State under the following column headings in the School Performance Tables:
 - i. "% achieving 5 + A* - C GCSEs (or equivalent) including English and maths GCSEs";
 - ii. "% achieving the English Baccalaureate"; and
 - iii. "% of pupils making expected progress";

- c) information about where and how parents (including parents of prospective pupils) can access the most recent report about the Academy published by the Chief Inspector; and
- d) information as to where and how parents (including parents of prospective pupils) can access the School Performance Tables published by the Secretary of State.

2.31 The Academy Trust must ensure that, in relation to any **16-19 Academies**, any performance information requested by the Secretary of State is published on the Academy's website.

2.32 The Secretary of State may direct any Academy to participate in international education surveys, under the Education Act 1996, as if it were a maintained school.

3. GRANT FUNDING

Recurrent Expenditure Grants

3.1 The Secretary of State will pay grants towards Recurrent Expenditure, and may pay grants towards Capital Expenditure, for each Academy.

3.2 "**Recurrent Expenditure**" means any money spent on the establishment, conduct, administration and maintenance of an Academy which does not fall within Capital Expenditure.

3.3 In respect of Recurrent Expenditure, the Secretary of State will pay **General Annual Grant ("GAG")** and may additionally pay **Earmarked Annual Grant ("EAG")**. These are two separate and distinct grants.

3.4 Except with the Secretary of State's consent, the Academy Trust must not make commitments to spending which will have substantial implications for future grant. No decision by the Academy Trust will commit the Secretary of State to paying any particular amount of grant.

Capital Grant

3.5 The Secretary of State may pay a grant ("**Capital Grant**") to the Academy Trust for the purpose of spending on items of Capital Expenditure.

3.6 "**Capital Expenditure**" means expenditure on:

- a) acquiring land and buildings;
- b) erecting, enlarging, improving or demolishing any building including fixed plant, installation, wall, fence or other structure, or any playground or hard standing;
- c) installing electrical, mechanical or other services other than necessary repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- d) buying vehicles;
- e) installing and equipping premises with furnishings and equipment, other than necessary repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- f) installing and equipping premises with computers, networking for computers, operating software and ICT equipment, other than necessary updates or repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- g) providing and equipping premises, including playing fields and other facilities for social activities and physical recreation other than necessary repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- h) works of a permanent character other than the purchase or replacement of minor day-to-day items;
- i) any major repairs or replacements which are specified as capital expenditure in any grant letter relating to them;
- j) such other items (whether like or unlike any of the foregoing) of a substantial or enduring nature which the Secretary of State agrees are capital expenditure for the purposes of this Agreement;

- k) professional fees properly and reasonably incurred in connection with the provision of any of the above;
 - l) VAT and other taxes payable on any of the above.
- 3.7 Any Capital Grant funding that may be made available to the Academy Trust will be notified to it by the Secretary of State.
- 3.8 The Academy Trust must spend Capital Grant only on items of Capital Expenditure approved by the Secretary of State and in accordance with conditions specified by the Secretary of State. Further, the Academy Trust must provide evidence that it has obtained all planning and other consents required for any proposed building and infrastructure development to be funded using Capital Grant.
- 3.9 In order to receive payments of Capital Grant, the Academy Trust must provide supporting invoices and certificates in the format specified by the Secretary of State.
- 3.10 The Academy Trust must provide an account of Capital Grant received and associated spending on Capital Expenditure using Capital Grant in the Academy Trust's financial statements and any financial reports or returns that the Secretary of State may require.
- 3.11 If in its use of Capital Grant the Academy Trust does not comply with this Agreement or any of the conditions specified by the Secretary of State, or the project does not accord with the original specification or has not been completed, the Secretary of State may at his discretion not make any further payments of Capital Grant and require the Academy Trust to repay all or part of the Capital Grant.

General Annual Grant (GAG)

- 3.12 The Secretary of State will pay GAG to the Academy Trust towards the normal running costs or capital expenditure of each of its Academies, including:

- a) teachers' salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, full and part-time teaching staff and payments in respect of seconded teachers);
- b) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions);
- c) employees' expenses;
- d) buying, maintaining, repairing and replacing teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books and stationery;
- e) buying, maintaining, repairing and replacing other assets including ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;
- f) examination fees;
- g) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc.); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); insurance; cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewerage; fuel and light (including electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- h) medical equipment and supplies;
- i) staff development (including in-service training);
- j) curriculum development;
- k) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school lunches to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and any discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with SEN or disabilities;
- l) administration; and

m) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.

3.13 GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Mainstream Academy**, **Special Academy** and **Studio School** will include:

- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and taking account of the number of pupils at the Academy;
- b) funding to cover necessary functions which would be carried out by the relevant LA if the Academy were a maintained school;
- c) payment of any additional specific grants made available to maintained schools, where the Academy meets the criteria for those grants, and at the Secretary of State's discretion; and
- d) funding for any other costs to the Academy which the Secretary of State considers necessary.

3.14 The Academy Trust must use GAG only for maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing the Academies in accordance with this Agreement and the relevant Supplemental Agreement, except where the Secretary of State has given specific consent for the Academy Trust to use GAG for another charitable purpose.

3.15 In particular (but without limitation) the Academy Trust must not use GAG for:

- a) education and training for adults who are not pupils of the Academy, other than staff professional development;
- b) nursery provision for which parents are charged a fee;
- c) nursery provision to children outside of the relevant Academy's age range as stated in the applicable Supplemental Agreement;
- d) Children's Centres;
- e) any additional cost of providing sport and leisure facilities for a purpose not permitted in clause 3.14.

Earmarked Annual Grant (EAG)

- 3.16 The Secretary of State may pay EAG to the Academy Trust for specific purposes, agreed between the Secretary of State and the Academy Trust, and as described in the relevant funding letter. The Academy Trust must spend EAG only in accordance with that letter.
- 3.17 Where the Academy Trust is seeking a specific EAG for any Academy Financial Year, it must send a letter outlining its proposals and the reasons for the request to the DfE.

Arrangements for paying GAG and EAG

- 3.18 Before each Academy Financial Year, the Secretary of State will notify the Academy Trust of the GAG and EAG amounts in respect of each Academy which, subject to parliamentary approval, the Secretary of State plans for that Academy Financial Year and how these have been calculated.
- 3.19 The amounts of GAG for an Academy Financial Year will be determined annually by the Secretary of State, and notified to the Academy Trust in a funding letter sent before the relevant Academy Financial Year begins (the "**Annual Letter of Funding**").
- 3.20 Amounts of EAG will be notified to the Academy Trust wherever possible in the Annual Letter of Funding or as soon as is practicable afterwards.
- 3.21 The Annual Letter of Funding will, as well as stating the grant amounts, set out how these have been calculated. It will not include grants which cannot be calculated in time because there is not enough information, or for other administrative reasons. Any such grants will be notified as soon as practicable.
- 3.22 The Secretary of State will pay GAG in monthly instalments on or before first day of each month ("the relevant month"), to fund the salaries and other payroll costs of all monthly paid employees and all other costs payable during the relevant month. The detailed arrangements for payment will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding, or an equivalent.

3.23 If GAG or EAG is miscalculated:

- a) because of a mistake by the Secretary of State, which leads to an underpayment to the Academy Trust, the Secretary of State will correct the underpayment in the same or subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- b) because the Academy Trust provided incorrect information, which leads to an underpayment to the Academy Trust, the Secretary of State may correct the underpayment in the same or subsequent Academy Financial Years;
- c) for any reason which results in an overpayment to the Academy Trust, the Secretary of State may recover any overpaid grant in the same or subsequent Academy Financial Years, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Academy Trust.

Other relevant funding

3.24. The Academy Trust may receive additional funding from an LA under an agreement with that LA for the provision of support for pupils with SEN who require high levels of such support. The Academy Trust must ensure that all support required under that agreement is provided for those pupils.

4. FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS

General

- 4.1 In order for the Secretary of State to provide grant funding to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust must be fulfilling the financial and reporting requirements in this Agreement, and any Supplemental Agreements.
- 4.2 In its conduct and operation, the Academy Trust must apply financial and other controls which meet the requirements of regularity, propriety and value for money.

- 4.3 The Academy Trust must appoint an accounting officer and must notify the Secretary of State of that appointment. The Academy Trust must assign to the accounting officer the responsibilities of the role set out in the Academies Financial Handbook and HM Treasury's publication 'Managing Public Money'.
- 4.4 The Academy Trust must abide by the requirements of, and have regard to the guidance for, charities and charity trustees issued by the Charity Commission and, in particular, the Charity Commission's guidance on 'Protecting Charities from Harm'. Any references in this document which require charity trustees to report to the Charity Commission should instead be interpreted as reporting to the body or person appointed as the principal regulator under the Charities Act 2011.
- 4.5 The Academy Trust must abide by the requirements of the current 16 to 19 Funding Guidance published by the Secretary of State, in respect of any provision for students who are above compulsory school age until the academic year in which they reach the age of 19.
- 4.5A If the Secretary of State pays any grant to or on behalf of the Academy Trust, in respect of any Free Schools that the Academy Trust establishes and maintains, which includes an amount to cover VAT, the Academy Trust shall, having paid the VAT, promptly submit a VAT reclaim application to Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs (HMRC). Any failure by the Academy Trust to submit a VAT reclaim application to HMRC, or to pursue the application diligently, or to repay any reclaimed amount to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following receipt will be taken into account by the Secretary of State in:
- a) calculating and paying any subsequent grant to the Academy Trust; or
 - b) adjusting GAG payable to the Academy Trust in subsequent Academy Financial Years.

Application of the Academies Financial Handbook

- 4.6 In relation to the use of grant paid to the Academy Trust by the Secretary of State, the Academy Trust must follow the requirements of, and have regard to the guidance in, the Academies Financial Handbook.
- 4.7 The Academy Trust must have adequate insurance cover or opt in to the Department's arrangements as set out in the Academies Financial Handbook.
- 4.8 The Academy Trust must submit information about its finances to the Secretary of State in accordance with the Academies Financial Handbook, or as otherwise specified by the Secretary of State.

Budgeting for funds

- 4.9 The Academy Trust must balance its budget from each Academy Financial Year to the next. For the avoidance of doubt, this does not prevent the Academy Trust from:
- a) subject to clause 4.14, carrying a surplus from one Academy Financial Year to the next; or
 - b) carrying forward from previous Academy Financial Years sufficient cumulative surpluses on grants from the Secretary of State to meet an in-year deficit on such grants in a subsequent financial year, in accordance with clauses 4.14-4.16 and 3.L of the relevant Supplemental Agreement; or
 - c) incurring an in-year deficit on funds from sources other than grants from the Secretary of State in any Academy Financial Year, provided it does not affect the Academy Trust's responsibility to ensure that its Academies balance their respective overall budgets from each Academy Financial Year to the next.
- 4.10 The Academy Trust may spend or accumulate funds from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State for the benefit of the Academy Trust as it sees fit. Any surplus from private or public sources

other than grants from the Secretary of State must be separately identified in the Academy Trust's accounts.

- 4.11 For clarity, and in accordance with the intent of parity of funding with LA maintained schools, in circumstances where a Predecessor School had a deficit balance and the DfE has settled this with the relevant LA, that amount will be recovered from the Academy Trust's GAG over a period not normally exceeding 3 years (unless the Secretary of State's in his discretion decides otherwise) after the Academy opened.
- 4.12 The Academy Trust's budget must be approved for each Academy Financial Year by the Board of Charity Trustees.
- 4.13 The approved budget must be submitted to the Secretary of State in a form, and by a date, to be notified by the Secretary of State.

Carrying forward of funds

- 4.14 At the end of any Academy Financial Year the Academy Trust may carry forward unspent GAG from previous Academy Financial Years without limit (unless a limit is specified in the Academies Financial Handbook, or otherwise as specified in writing by the Secretary of State, in which case that limit will apply).
- 4.15 The Academy Trust must use any GAG carried forward only for purposes of GAG as set out in this agreement, or otherwise as specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or in writing by the Secretary of State.
- 4.16 Any additional grant provided for an Academy's Start-Up Period may be carried forward, without limitation or deduction, until the Start-Up Period ends.
- 4.17 Any unspent grant not allowed to be carried forward under clauses 4.14-4.16 and 3.L of the relevant Supplemental Agreement may be taken into account in the payment of subsequent grant.

Annual accounts and audit

- 4.18 The Academy Trust must prepare and file with Companies House the annual reports and accounts required by the Companies Act 2006.
- 4.19 In addition, the Academy Trust must prepare its annual reports and accounts for each Academy Financial Year:
- a) in accordance with the Charity Commission's 'Accounting and Reporting by Charities: Statement of Recommended Practice', as if the Academy Trust was a registered charity; and
 - b) otherwise as the Secretary of State directs.
- 4.20 The Academy Trust's accounts must be audited annually by independent auditors appointed in line with the Academies Financial Handbook.
- 4.21 The accounts must carry an audit report stating whether, in the opinion of the auditors, the accounts show a true and fair view of the Academy Trust's affairs. The accounts must also be supported by such other audit reports, relating to the use of grants and other matters, as the Secretary of State directs.
- 4.22 The Academy Trust's annual report must include the names of all members of the Academy Trust who served during the year.
- 4.23 The Academy Trust's annual reports and accounts, and the auditor's reports, must be submitted to the Secretary of State by 31 December each Academy Financial Year, or as otherwise specified by the Secretary of State. The Academy Trust must publish on its website its annual reports and accounts, current memorandum of association, Articles and Funding Agreement and the names of its Charity Trustees and members. The Secretary of State may also publish the Academy Trust's annual reports and accounts, and the audit report, as he sees fit.

Keeping financial records

4.24 The Academy Trust must keep proper accounting records. Statements of income and expenditure, statements of cash flow and balance sheets must be produced in such form and frequency as the Secretary of State directs.

Access to financial records

4.25 The books of accounts and all relevant records, files and reports of the Academy Trust, including those relating to financial controls, must be open at all reasonable times to officials of the DfE and the National Audit Office, and to their agents and contractors, for inspection or carrying out value for money studies. The Academy Trust must give those officials and contractors reasonable assistance with their enquiries. For the purposes of this clause 'relevant' means in any way relevant to the provision and use of grants provided by the Secretary of State under this Agreement.

4.26 The Secretary of State may, at his expense, instruct auditors to report to him on the adequacy and effectiveness of the Academy Trust's accounting systems and internal controls to standards determined by the Secretary of State, and to make recommendations for improving the Academy Trust's financial management.

Acquiring and disposing of Publicly Funded Assets

4.27 In relation to Publicly Funded Assets, the Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:

- a) acquire or dispose of freehold land;
- b) take up or grant a leasehold of land;

dispose of any other class of capital assets except as permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook, and subject to Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

4.28 The Academy Trust must give 30 days' notice to the Secretary of State, whether or not the circumstances require his approval, of its intention to take any of the actions in clause 4.27.

Retention of proceeds from the disposal of capital assets

4.29 Except as permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook, if the Academy Trust sells capital assets which were acquired or enhanced wholly or partly using payments made by or on behalf of HM Government the Academy Trust must pay to the Secretary of State, at his request, an amount of the sale proceeds equivalent to the proportion of the original cost of the acquisition or enhancement which was met by or on behalf of HM Government.

4.30 If the Academy Trust sells a capital asset which was transferred to it for no or nominal consideration from an LA, a Predecessor School or a Predecessor School's foundation, the Academy Trust must, if required by the Secretary of State, pay all or part of the sale proceeds to the LA or to the Secretary of State, taking into account the amount of the proceeds to be reinvested by the Academy Trust.

Transactions outside the usual planned range

4.31 In relation to Publicly Funded Assets, the Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:

- a) give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort, except such as are given in normal contractual relations;
- b) write off any debts or liabilities owed to it; or
- c) offer to make any special payments as defined in HM Treasury's publication 'Managing Public Money' (including ex gratia payments, staff severance payments and compensation payments)

above any values specified in the Academies Financial Handbook.

- 4.32 The Academy Trust must give the Secretary of State 30 days' notice, whether or not the circumstances require his consent, of its intention to do any of the actions in clause 4.31.
- 4.33 The Academy Trust must promptly notify the Secretary of State of any loss arising from suspected theft or fraud in line with the requirements in the Academies Financial Handbook, or otherwise specified by the Secretary of State.

Borrowing

- 4.34 Except as permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook, the Academy Trust must not borrow against Publicly Funded Assets, or so as to put Publicly Funded Assets at risk, without the Secretary of State's consent.

5. COMPLAINTS

- 5.1 With regards to a **Mainstream Academy**, a **Special Academy** an **Alternative Provision Academy** or a **16-19 Academy**, if a complaint is made about matters arising wholly or partly before the Academy opened, and all or part of that complaint was investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III of the Local Government Act 1974 ("**Part III**"), or could have been investigated under Part III if the Predecessor School/Pupil Referral Unit had remained a maintained school/Pupil Referral Unit, the Academy Trust:
- a) must abide by the provisions of Part III as if the Academy were a maintained school/Pupil Referral Unit;
 - b) agrees that the Secretary of State will have the power to investigate the subject of the complaint as if it had taken place after the Academy opened; and
 - c) must act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as if that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school/Pupil Referral Unit.

5.2 With regards to a **Mainstream Academy**, a **Special Academy** or a **16-19 Academy**, if the Secretary of State could have given an order or a direction under section 496 or 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the Predecessor School and that order or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately before the Academy opened, the Academy Trust:

- a) agrees that the Secretary of State may give orders or directions to the Academy Trust as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school; and
- b) must act in accordance with any such order or direction from the Secretary of State.

5.3 If at the time of the opening of any **Mainstream Academy**, **Special Academy**, **Alternative Provision Academy** or **16-19 Academy** the investigation of a complaint made to the governing body of the Predecessor School/Pupil Referral Unit has not yet been completed, the Academy Trust must continue to investigate that complaint in accordance with the complaints procedures established by that governing body.

5.4 If a complaint is made to the Academy Trust about matters arising in whole or in part during the 12 months prior to the opening of any **Mainstream Academy**, any **Special Academy** any **Alternative Provision Academy** or any **16-19 Academy** the Academy Trust agrees to investigate that complaint as if the matter complained of had taken place after the Academy opened.

6. TERMINATION

6.1 This Agreement will commence on the date of delivery and continue until terminated in accordance with clauses 6.2-6.7, or until all Supplemental Agreements have terminated.

Termination by either party

6.2 The Secretary of State may serve a Termination Notice if any of the following events occur, or if he considers that there is a serious risk that any of them may occur:

- a) the Academy Trust calls a formal or informal meeting of its creditors or enters into any formal or informal composition or arrangement with its creditors; or
- b) the Academy Trust proposes a voluntary arrangement within Section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (as amended); or
- c) the Academy Trust is unable to pay its debts within the meaning of Section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986 provided that, for the purposes of this clause, Section 123 (1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 will have effect as if £10,000 was substituted for £750. The Academy Trust will not be deemed unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this clause if any such demand as is mentioned in the said Section is being contested in good faith by the Academy Trust; or
- d) the Academy Trust has a receiver and manager (except those appointed by the Charity Commission under the Charities Act 2011), administrator or administrative receiver appointed over all or part of its undertakings, assets or income; or
- e) any distraint, execution or other process is levied or enforced on any of the Academy Trust's property and is not paid out, withdrawn or discharged within 15 business days; or
- f) the Academy Trust has passed a resolution for its winding up; or
- g) an order is made for the winding up or administration of the Academy Trust.

6.3 The Academy Trust must promptly notify the Secretary of State, with an explanation of the circumstances, after receiving any petition which may result in an order for its winding up or administration.

6.4 If

- a) any Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust refuses to consent to any checks required under this Agreement, or as otherwise requested by the Secretary of State; or
- b) the Secretary of State determines that any Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust is unsuitable,

the Secretary of State may:

- i. direct the Academy Trust to ensure that the Charity Trustee or member resigns or is removed within 42 days, failing which the Secretary of State may serve a Termination Notice; or
- ii. serve a Termination Notice.

6.5 For the purposes of clause 6.4 a Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust will be “unsuitable” if that Charity Trustee or member:

- a) has been convicted of an offence;
- b) has been given a caution in respect of an offence;
- c) is subject to a relevant finding in respect of an offence; or
- d) has engaged in relevant conduct,

as a result of which, the Secretary of State considers that that Charity Trustee or member is unsuitable to take part in the management of the Academies.

6.6 For the purposes of clause 6.5:

- a) a Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust will be subject to a “relevant finding” in respect of an offence if:

- i. that Charity Trustee or member has been found not guilty of the offence by reason of insanity;
 - ii. that Charity Trustee or member has been found to be under a disability and to have done the act charged against them in respect of the offence; or
 - iii. a court outside the United Kingdom has made a finding equivalent to that described in paragraphs (i) and (ii) above.
- b) “relevant conduct” is conduct by a Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust which is:
 - i. aimed at undermining the fundamental British values of democracy, the rule of law, individual liberty and mutual respect and tolerance of those with different faiths and beliefs; or
 - ii. found to be in breach of professional standards by a professional body; or
 - iii. so inappropriate that, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, it makes that Charity Trustee or member unsuitable to take part in the management of the Academy.

Change of Control of the Academy Trust

- 6.7 The Secretary of State may at any time, subject to clause 6.8, serve a Termination Notice if there is a change:
- a) in the Control of the Academy Trust; or
 - b) in the Control of a legal entity that Controls the Academy Trust.
- 6.8 Where a person ('P') is a member or director of a body corporate (as a corporation sole or otherwise) by virtue of an office, no change of Control arises merely by P's successor becoming a member or director in P's place.

- 6.9 The Academy Trust must promptly notify the Secretary of State if there is a proposed or actual change of Control of the Academy Trust, or of a legal entity that Controls the Academy Trust.
- 6.10 When notifying the Secretary of State further to clause 6.9, the Academy Trust must seek his agreement that, if he is satisfied with the change of Control, he will not exercise his right to terminate this Agreement further to clause 6.7.

7. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS

Information

- 7.1 The Academy Trust must promptly provide to the Secretary of State any information about the Academy Trust, or any of its Academies, which he regards as necessary to fulfil his role and responsibilities.
- 7.2 The Secretary of State will give the Academy Trust any information it reasonably requires of him for the running of its Academies.

Access by the Secretary of State's Officers

- 7.3 The Academy Trust must allow DfE officials to enter any of its Academies at any reasonable time. All records, files and reports relating to the running of each Academy must be available to them at any reasonable time. Two DfE officials may attend and speak at any meetings of each Academy's Local Governing Body, of the Academy Trust's Board of Charity Trustees or any other meetings of the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust, but will withdraw from any discussion of an Academy's or the Academy Trust's relationship with the Secretary of State or any discussion of bids for funding to the Secretary of State.
- 7.4 The following documents must be provided to the Secretary of State or any person nominated by the Secretary of State on request:

- a) the agenda for every meeting of the Board of Charity Trustees, any Local Governing Body or any committee to which the Board of Charity Trustees delegates any of its functions;
- b) the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the chairman of that meeting;
- c) the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
- d) any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting.

7.5 The Academy Trust may exclude from items provided under clause 7.4 any content relating to:

- a) a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at any Academy;
- b) a named pupil or student at, or candidate for admission to, any Academy; and
- c) any matter which the Academy Trust reasonably believes should remain confidential.

Notices

7.6 A notice or communication given to a party in connection with this Agreement or any Supplemental Agreement:

- a) must be in writing (excluding email, except where agreed in advance) and in English;
- b) must be delivered by hand or sent by pre-paid first-class post or other next working day delivery service;
- c) will be deemed to have been received:
 - i. if delivered by hand, at the time when a delivery receipt is signed or when the notice is left at the address in paragraph (d), or

- ii. if posted, at 9.00am on the second working day after posting; and
- d) must be sent to the party for the attention of the contact and at the address listed as follows (or to a different contact or address previously notified to the sending party, the change taking effect five working days after deemed receipt of the notice):

Name of party	Position of contact	Address
Secretary of State	Head of Academies Division	Department for Education, Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London, SW1P 3BT
Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust	Chair of trustees	King's Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU

Contractual

- 7.7 This Academy Trust cannot assign this Agreement.
- 7.8 Failure to exercise, or delay in exercising, any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement (including the right to terminate this Agreement), or a single or partial exercise of such a right or remedy, is not a waiver of, and does not prevent or restrict any initial or further exercise of, that or any other right or remedy.
- 7.9 Termination of this Agreement will not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties to this Agreement existing at termination.
- 7.10 This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered will constitute a duplicate original, but all of which will together constitute the same agreement.

7.11 This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) will be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales, and submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

2018

Executed on behalf of the **Academy Trust** by:

.....

Director

.....

Witness

Name:

Address:

The Corporate Seal of
THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION
affixed to this deed is authenticated by:

.....

Duly Authorised



Department
for Education

© Crown copyright 2014

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

visit www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2
email psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

We welcome feedback. If you would like to make any comments about this publication, please email AFSPD.feedback@education.gsi.gov.uk, quoting the title of this document. Specific project queries should be sent to the allocated project lead/lead contact.

About this publication:

enquiries www.education.gov.uk/contactus
download www.gov.uk/government/publications

Reference: DFE-00438-2014



Follow us on Twitter:
[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:
facebook.com/educationgovuk

Schedule C
Supplemental Funding Agreement



Department
for Education

Mainstream academy and free school: supplemental funding agreement Bengeworth CE Academy

April 2016 version

Contents

SUMMARY SHEET	4
Information about the Academy:	4
1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY	8
Definitions and interpretation	8
The Academy	9
2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY	9
Teachers and staff	9
Pupils	10
SEN unit	10
Charging	10
Admissions	100
Curriculum	133
3. GRANT FUNDING	155
Calculation of GAG	155
Other relevant funding	17
4. LAND	17
<i>Version 2: existing leasehold site</i>	17
<i>Version 3: existing site held under church supplemental agreement or lease from private site trustees</i>	22
5. TERMINATION	22
Termination by either party	22
Termination Warning Notice	23
Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection	24
Termination by the Secretary of State	24

Funding and admission during notice period	24
Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust	25
Effect of termination	27
6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS	29
Annexes	29
The Master Agreement	29
General	29
ANNEXES	32
7. PUPILS WITH SPECIAL EDUCATION NEEDS (SEN) AND DISABILITIES	32
8. ADMISSION OF PUPILS WITH SEN AND DISABILITIES	32

SUMMARY SHEET

Information about the Academy:

Name of Academy Trust	Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust
Company number	08943457
Date of Master Funding Agreement	
Name of academy	Bengeworth CE Academy
Opening date	1 June 2014
Type of academy (indicate whether academy or free school)	Academy
Religious designation	Church of England
Wholly or partly selective	Not applicable
Name of predecessor school (where applicable)	Bengeworth First School
Capacity number	540
Age range	4-10
Number of sixth form places	Not applicable
Number of boarding places	Nopt applicable
SEN unit / Resource provision	Not applicable
Land arrangements (Version 1-7 or other)	Versions 2 and 3
Address and title number of Land	King's Road, Evesham, Worcs, WR11 3EU Title numbers WR131155 and WR99174

Please confirm which clause variations have been applied or marked as 'Not used'

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
1.I	Only applies to free schools and new provision academies		X
2.A.1	Clause applies where an academy was previously a VC or foundation school designated with a religious character	X	
2.C, 2.D	Only applies where the academy has an SEN unit		X
2.E	Only applies where there was a predecessor independent school		X
2.G	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
2.M	Clause applies only to academies and free schools designated with a religious character	X	
2.N	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly wholly selective grammar schools		X
2.O	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly partially selective grammar schools		X
2.T	Clause applies to free schools and new provision academies designated with a religious character		X
2.W	Clause only applies where the academy is designated with a religious character	X	
2.X	Clause only applies where the academy has not been designated with a religious character		X
2.Y	Clause applies where an academy was previously a VC school or foundation school designated with a religious character	X	
2.Yc)	Sub-clause applies if the academy is designated with a denominational religious character – CE etc. rather than 'Christian'	X	

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
3.A – 3.F	Option 1 applies to converter and sponsored academies: if used delete option 2	X	
3.A – 3.F	Option 2 applies to free schools and new provision academies: if used delete option 1		X
3.H	Clause relating to Start-up only applies in some cases (does not apply to academy converters)		X
3.J	Clause only applies to full sponsored and intermediate sponsored academies with approved Academy Action Plans		X
3.K	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
5.G.1	Clause applies only to a boarding academy/free school.		X
5.I	Clause only applies to sponsored academies		X
5.K	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.L	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.M	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.N	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.O	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
6.H	Clause only applies to schools which are designated with a Church of England or Roman Catholic character	X	

Please identify any other variations from the model that apply to this academy (e.g. clauses relating to PFI, or any required because the multi academy trust includes academies designated with different religious characters, or a

mixture of those designated with a religious character, and those which are not):

Additional clauses will be supplied by your project lead if needed.

Descriptor	Clause No.	Applied	Not used
Local governing body for former VC school	2.A.2	X	

1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY

1.A This Agreement made between the Secretary of State for Education and Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust is supplemental to the master funding agreement made between the same parties and dated _____ (the “**Master Agreement**”).

Definitions and interpretation

1.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement will have those same meanings in this Agreement.

1.C The following capitalised words and expressions will have the following meanings:

“The **Academy**” means Bengeworth CE Academy.

“**Coasting**” has the meaning given by regulations under subsection (3) of section 60B of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 in relation to a school to which that section applies.

“**SEN**” means Special Educational Needs and the expressions “**special educational needs**” and “**special educational provision**” have the meaning set out in sections 20(1) and 21(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

“**Termination Notice**” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, terminating this Agreement on the date specified in the notice.

“**Termination Warning Notice**” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, stating his intention to terminate this Agreement.

1.D The Interpretation Act 1978 applies to this Agreement as it applies to an Act of Parliament.

1.E Reference in this Agreement to clauses and annexes will, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes to this Agreement.

The Academy

- 1.F The Academy is a Mainstream Academy as defined in clause 1.4 of the Master Agreement.
- 1.G The Academy Trust will establish and maintain the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement.
- 1.H The Academy Trust opened the Academy on 1 June 2014.
- 1.I Not used.

2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY

Teachers and staff

2.A Subject to clause 2.4 of the Master Agreement, 7.A of this Agreement and section 67 of the Children and Families Act 2014, the Academy Trust may, in accordance with any relevant Guidance, employ anyone it believes is suitably qualified or is otherwise eligible to plan and prepare lessons and courses for pupils, teach pupils, and assess and report on pupils' development, progress and attainment.

2.A.1 The Academy Trust shall in relation to:

- a) any person who may apply for a position as an employee or to be otherwise engaged by the Academy Trust, and
- b) any employee with whom the Academy Trust enters into a contract of employment or a contract for services,

act in accordance with and hereby agrees to be bound by section 124AA of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ("SSFA"), so far as those provisions apply to, and as if the Academy Trust were, a voluntary controlled or foundation school designated by an order under section 69(3) of the SSFA as a school having a religious character. For the avoidance of doubt, the Academy Trust agrees and acknowledges that section 124A of the SSFA shall

not therefore apply to it in relation to the persons referred to at (a) and (b) above.

2.A.2 The Academy Trust shall establish for the Academy a Local Governing Body to which it may delegate any of its powers and functions in relation to the operation of the Academy. The role of the Local Governing Body and the membership of it shall be for the Academy Trust to decide but the Academy Trust will ensure that the Academy operates in a way which honours the characteristics that the Academy has by virtue of clause 2.A.1 of this Agreement and will, as a minimum, ensure that:

(a) no more than 25% of the members of the Local Governing Body shall be appointed for the purpose of securing that the Academy is conducted in accordance with the principles, practices and tenets of the Church of England; and

(b) a minimum of two parents of pupils at the Academy (to be elected by the parents of registered pupils of the Academy) shall be members of the Local Governing Body.

Pupils

2.B The planned capacity of the Academy is 540 in the age range 4-10. The Academy will be an all ability inclusive school.

SEN unit

2.C Not used.

2.D Not used.

Charging

2.E Not used.

Admissions

2.F Subject to clauses 2.K– 2.L the Academy Trust will act in accordance with, and will ensure that its Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in

accordance with, the School Admissions Code and School Admission Appeals Code published by the DfE (the “Codes”) and all relevant admissions law as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools, and with equalities law. Reference in the Codes or legislation to “admission authorities” will be deemed to be references to the Academy Trust.

- 2.G Pupils on roll in a Predecessor School which was a maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at that Predecessor School must be admitted to the Academy.
- 2.H The Academy Trust must participate in the local Fair Access Protocol. The Academy Trust must participate in the coordinated admission arrangements operated by the LA in whose area the Academy is situated. If the Academy is a free school, the Academy Trust is not required to participate in coordination for its first intake of pupils.
- 2.I The Academy Trust may determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in line with the Codes) that give priority for admission to children attracting the Pupil Premium, including the service premium (the “pupil premium admission criterion”), but not above looked-after children and previously looked-after children.
- 2.J Where the Academy Trust applies the pupil premium admission criterion, it must provide information in its admission arrangements about eligibility for the premiums.
- 2.K For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:
- a) any personal details about their financial status; or
 - b) whether parents are serving in the UK armed forces or were serving in

the UK armed forces, and are exercising parental care and responsibility for the child in question.

2.L The Secretary of State may:

- a) direct the Academy Trust to admit a named pupil to the Academy:
 - i. following an application from an LA including complying with a school attendance order as defined in section 437 of the Education Act 1996. Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust; or
 - ii. where in relation to a specific child or children the Academy Trust has failed to act in accordance with the Codes or this Agreement or has otherwise acted unlawfully; or
- b) direct the Academy Trust to amend its admission arrangements where they do not comply with the Codes or this Agreement, or are otherwise unlawful.

2.M The Academy is an Academy designated with a Church of England religious character. The relevant religious authority (i.e. the diocese, or foundation faith body) is Diocese of Worcester.

2.N Not used.

2.O Not used.

2.P The Academy Trust must ensure that parents and 'relevant children' (as described in the **Codes**) have the right to appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Academy Trust. The arrangements for appeals must comply with the Codes as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

2.Q Subject to clause 2.R, the meaning of "**relevant area**" for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the relevant LA for maintained schools in the area in

accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

- 2.R If the Academy does not consider the relevant area determined by the LA for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August before the academic year in question for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust and the LA in whose area the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.
- 2.S The Office of the Schools Adjudicator ("**OSA**") will consider objections to the Academy's admission arrangements (except objections against the agreed variations from the Codes specified at clause 2.K, over which it has no jurisdiction). The Academy Trust must therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy's admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA. The OSA's determination of an objection is binding on the Academy and the Academy Trust must make appropriate changes to its admission arrangements as quickly as possible.
- 2.T Not used.

Curriculum

- 2.U The Academy Trust must provide for the teaching of religious education and a daily act of collective worship at the Academy.
- 2.V The Academy Trust must comply with section 71(1)-(6) and (8) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if references to "religious education" and "religious worship" in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with clauses 2.W and 2.Y.
- 2.W Subject to clause 2.V, **where the academy is designated with a religious character** (in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and

Framework Act 1998 or further to section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010):

- a) provision must be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the tenets of the Academy's specified religion or religious denomination. This is subject to paragraph 4 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, which applies as if the Academy were a voluntary aided school with a religious character;
- b) the Academy Trust must comply with section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a foundation school with a religious character or a voluntary school, and as if references to "the required collective worship" were references to collective worship in accordance with the tenets and practices of the Academy's specified religion or religious denomination;
- c) the Academy Trust must ensure that the quality of religious education given to pupils at the Academy and the contents of the Academy's collective worship given in accordance with the tenets and practices of its specific religion or religious denomination are inspected. The inspection must be conducted by a person chosen by the Academy Trust, and the Academy Trust must ensure that the inspection complies with the statutory provisions and regulations which would apply if the Academy were a foundation or voluntary school designated as having a religious character.

2.X Not used

2.Y. Subject to clause 2.V, the requirements for religious education and collective worship are as follows:

- a) subject to paragraph 3 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, which will apply as if the Academy were a foundation school or voluntary controlled school with a religious character, provision must be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements

for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996;

- b) the Academy Trust must comply with section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a foundation school or voluntary controlled school with a religious character, and as if references to “the required collective worship” were references to collective worship in accordance with the tenets and practices of the Academy’s specified religion or religious denomination;
- c) the Academy Trust must ensure that the quality of the Academy’s collective worship, given in accordance with the tenets and practices of its specific religion or religious denomination, is inspected. The inspection must be conducted by a person chosen by the Academy Trust and the Academy Trust must secure that the inspection complies with statutory provisions and regulations which would apply if the Academy were a foundation or voluntary controlled school designated as having a religious character.

2.Z. The Academy Trust must have regard to any Guidance, further to section 403 of the Education Act 1996, on sex and relationship education to ensure that children at the Academy are protected from inappropriate teaching materials and that they learn the nature of marriage and its importance for family life and for bringing up children. The Academy Trust must also have regard to the requirements in section 405 of the Education Act 1996, as if the Academy were a maintained school.

2.AA The Academy Trust must prevent political indoctrination, and secure the balanced treatment of political issues, in line with the requirements for maintained schools set out in the Education Act 1996, and have regard to any Guidance.

3. **GRANT FUNDING**

Calculation of GAG

3A-3D. Not used.

- 3.E The Secretary of State will calculate GAG based on the pupil count at the Academy. In order to calculate GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens, the pupil count will be determined on the same basis as that used by the relevant LA for determining the budget of the maintained Predecessor School.
- 3.F For Academy Financial Years after that referred to in clause 3.E, the basis of the pupil count for determining GAG will be:
- a) for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
 - b) for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which is in use at the time for maintained schools.
- 3.G The Secretary of State may, at his discretion, adjust the basis of the pupil count to take account of any diseconomies of scale which may affect the Academy if it is operating below the planned capacity in clause 2.B. If such an adjustment is made in any Academy Financial Year, this will not change the basis of the pupil count for calculating the following Academy Financial Year's GAG. If the Secretary of State has indicated that additional grant may be payable in such circumstances, the Academy Trust will bid for this additional grant based on need and providing appropriate supporting evidence. The Secretary of State may accept or refuse the bid at his discretion.
- 3.H Not used.
- 3.I The Secretary of State recognises that if a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice is served, or the Master Agreement is otherwise terminated, the intake of new pupils during the notice period may decline and therefore payments based on the number of pupils attending the Academy may be insufficient to meet the Academy's needs. In these circumstances the Secretary of State may pay a larger GAG in the notice period, to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

Other relevant funding

3.J Not used.

3.K The Secretary of State may pay the Academy Trust's costs in connection with the transfer of employees from a Predecessor School under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Such payment will be agreed on a case-by-case basis. The Academy Trust must not budget for such a payment unless the Secretary of State confirms in writing that it will be paid.

Carrying forward of funds

3.L Any additional grant made in accordance with clause 3.I, for a period after the Secretary of State has served a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice under this Agreement, or otherwise terminates the Master Agreement, may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the circumstances set out in clause 3.I cease to apply or the Academy closes.

4. LAND

Version 2: existing leasehold site

"Land" means the land at King's Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU , being the land registered with title numbers WR131155 and WR99174 and demised by the Lease.

"Lease" means the lease or other occupational agreement between the Academy Trust and a third party (the **"Landlord"**) under which the Academy Trust derives title to the Land.

"Property Notice" means any order, notice, proposal, demand or other requirement issued by any competent authority (including the Landlord) which materially affects the Academy Trust's ability to use the Land for the purposes of the Academy.

Restrictions on Land transfer

4.A The Academy Trust must:

- a) within 28 days of the signing of this Agreement in circumstances where the Land is transferred to the Academy Trust prior to the date of this Agreement, or otherwise within 28 days of the transfer of the Land to the Academy Trust, apply to the Land Registry using Form RX1 for the following restriction (the "Restriction") to be entered in the proprietorship register for the Land:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT;

- b) take any further steps reasonably required to ensure that the Restriction is entered on the proprietorship register;
- c) promptly confirm to the Secretary of State when the Restriction has been registered;
- d) if it has not registered the Restriction, permit the Secretary of State to do so in its place; and
- e) not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify, cancel or remove the Restriction, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust.

Obligations of the Academy Trust

- 4.B The Academy Trust must keep the Land clean and tidy and make good any damage or deterioration to the Land. The Academy Trust must not do anything to lessen the value or marketability of the Land without the Secretary of State's consent.
- 4.C The Academy Trust must comply with the Lease and promptly enforce its rights against the Landlord.
- 4.D The Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:

- a) terminate, vary, surrender, renew, dispose of or agree any revised rent under the Lease;
 - b) grant any consent or licence; or
 - c) create or allow any encumbrance; or
 - d) part with or share possession or occupation; or
 - e) enter into any onerous or restrictive obligations,
- in respect of all or part of the Land.

Option

4.E The Academy Trust grants and the Secretary of State accepts an option (the “**Option**”) to acquire the Land at nil consideration. The Secretary of State may exercise the Option in writing on termination of this Agreement. If the Option is exercised, completion will take place 28 days after the exercise date in accordance with the Law Society’s Standard Conditions of Sale for Commercial Property in force at that date.

Option Notice

- 4.F The Academy Trust:
- a) must, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to the Land Registry on Form AN1 (including a copy of this Agreement) for a notice of the Option (the “**Option Notice**”) to be entered in the register, taking any further steps required to have the Option Notice registered and promptly confirming to the Secretary of State when this has been done;
 - b) if it has not registered the Option Notice, agrees that the Secretary of State may apply to register it using Form UN1;
 - c) must not, without the Secretary of State’s consent, apply to disapply, modify or remove the Option Notice, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or

liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust, and

- d) must, in the case of previously unregistered land, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to register a Class C(iv) land charge in the Land Charges Registry, and send the Secretary of State a copy of the relevant entry within 7 days after the registration has been completed. If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not complied with this clause, he may apply to secure the registration.

Property Notices

4.G If the Academy Trust receives a Property Notice, it must:

- a) send a copy of it to the Secretary of State within 14 days, stating how the Academy Trust intends to respond to it;
- b) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about it;
- c) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to comply with it, and
- d) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State in connection with it.

Breach of Lease

4.H If the Academy Trust is, or if it is reasonably foreseeable that it will be, in material breach of the Lease, the Academy Trust must immediately give written notice to the Secretary of State stating what the breach is and what action the Academy Trust has taken or proposes to take to remedy it, including timescales where appropriate.

4.I After notifying the Secretary of State under clause 4.H, the Academy Trust must:

- a) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about the breach;

- b) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to remedy or prevent the breach, and
- c) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State to remedy or prevent the breach.

Sharing the Land

4.J Where:

- a) the Secretary of State identifies basic or parental need for additional places in the area in which the Academy is situated which cannot be satisfied by the Academy; and
- b) the Secretary of State then considers that not all the Land is needed for the operation of the Academy at planned capacity,

the Secretary of State must consult with the Academy Trust to determine whether part of the Land could be demised or sublet or otherwise made available to another Academy Trust, as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, for the purpose of that Academy Trust establishing and maintaining an educational institution on the Land.

4.K To the extent the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State agree to part of the Land being demised or sublet or otherwise made available in accordance with clause 4.J and provided that:-

(i) the part of the Land being demised, sublet or otherwise made available is, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, surplus to the Academy's needs to fulfil its obligations under this Agreement; and

(ii) the alienation of the relevant part of the Land would not be detrimental to the operation of the Academy by the Academy Trust,

the Academy Trust must use its reasonable endeavours to procure all necessary consents including either the approval of the Landlord or any necessary amendments to the Lease in order to enable it to demise, sublet or otherwise make available the relevant part of the Land to the incoming

academy trust and shall enter into any legal arrangements which the Secretary of State requires for this purpose. The Secretary of State shall meet the necessary and reasonable costs incurred by the Academy Trust in connection with this clause.

4.L For the purposes of clause 4.J:

- a) **a basic need** will arise when the forecast demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated is greater than the existing capacity to provide them;
- b) **a parental need** will arise when the DfE is actually aware of an additional demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated, following representations from parents in that area; and
- c) **planned capacity** has the meaning given in clause 2.B.

Version 3: existing site held under church supplemental agreement or lease from private site trustees

The parties' rights and obligations in respect of the Land are set out in the Church Supplemental Agreement dated _____ and made between (1) the Secretary of State; (2) the Academy Trust; (3) the Worcester Diocesan Board of Finance Limited; and (4) the Board of Education for the Diocese of Worcester. For the purposes of this clause, Land has the meaning given in the Church Supplemental Agreement .

5. TERMINATION

Termination by either party

5.A Either party may give at least seven Academy Financial Years' notice to terminate this Agreement. Such termination would take effect on 31 August of the relevant year.

Termination Warning Notice

5.B The Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice where he considers that:

- a) the Academy Trust has breached the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement; or
- b) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low; or
- c) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed; or
- d) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened, including due to breakdown of discipline; or
- e) the Academy is coasting provided he has notified the Academy Trust that it is coasting.

5.C A Termination Warning Notice served under clause 5.B will specify:

- a) the action the Academy Trust must take;
- b) the date by which the action must be completed; and
- c) the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations, or confirm that it agrees to undertake the specified action.

5.D The Secretary of State will consider any representations from the Academy Trust which he receives by the date specified in the Termination Warning Notice. The Secretary of State may amend the Termination Warning Notice to specify further action which the Academy Trust must take, and the date by which it must be completed.

5.E If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not responded to the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clause 5.C(c), or has not completed the action required in the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clauses 5.C(a) and (b) (and any further action specified under

clause 5.D) he may serve a Termination Notice.

Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection

5.F If the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Academy Trust that:

- a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy;
or
- b) the Academy requires significant improvement

the Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice, specifying the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations.

5.G In deciding whether to give notice of his intention to terminate under clause 5.F, the Secretary of State will have due regard to the overall performance of the Academy Trust.

5.G.1 Not used.

5.H If the Secretary of State has served a Termination Warning Notice under clause 5.F and:

- a) has not received any representations from the Academy Trust by the date specified in the notice; or
- b) having considered the representations made by the Academy Trust remains satisfied that this Agreement should be terminated;

he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.I Not used.

Termination by the Secretary of State

5.J If the Secretary of State has determined that the Academy will be removed from the Register of Independent Schools and no appeal against that determination is pending, he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.K Not used.

5.L Not used.

5.M Not used.

5.N Not used.

5.O Not used.

Funding and admission during notice period

5.P If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Notice under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy, and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

5.Q If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Warning Notice or a Termination Notice otherwise than under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy (unless the Secretary of State specifies otherwise), and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust

5.R The Secretary of State will, before the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide the Academy Trust with a final funding allocation indicating the level of GAG and EAG to be provided in the next Academy Financial Year (the **“Funding Allocation”**).

5.S If the Academy Trust is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Funding Allocation for the next Academy Financial Year (the **“Critical Year”**) and after taking into account all other resources likely to be available to the Academy, including other funds that are likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Academy Trust (**“All Other Resources”**), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Academy Trust may give written notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement on 31 August before the Critical Year.

5.T Any notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must be provided to

the Secretary of State within six weeks of the Secretary of State issuing the Funding Allocation. The notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must specify:

- a) the grounds upon which the Academy Trust's opinion is based, including:
 - i. evidence of those grounds;
 - ii. any professional accounting advice the Academy Trust has received;
 - iii. a detailed statement of steps which the Academy Trust proposes to take to ensure that the running costs of the Academy are reduced such that costs are less than the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources, and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and
- b) the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Academy Trust to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and
- c) a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the "**Projected Budget**").

5.U Both parties will use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.

5.V If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or another date if agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, then that question will be referred to an independent expert (the "**Expert**") for resolution. The Expert's determination will be final and binding on both parties. The Expert will

be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the "**Shortfall**").

- 5.W The Expert will be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert will be appointed by the President of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert's fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.X The Expert will be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist will be appointed by the Chairman of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust (or any successor or equivalent body). The educational specialist's fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.Y If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State will not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Academy Trust will be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August before the Critical Year. Any such notice will be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert's determination will have been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State will have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

Effect of termination

- 5.Z If this Agreement is terminated, the Academy will cease to be an Academy within the meaning of sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.
- 5.AA Subject to clauses 5.BB and 5.CC, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement under clause 5.A, he will indemnify the Academy Trust. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than under clause 5.A, he may at his discretion indemnify or compensate the Academy Trust.

- 5.BB The amount of any such indemnity or compensation will be determined by the Secretary of State, having regard to representations made to him by the Academy Trust, and will be paid as and when the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- 5.CC The categories of expenditure incurred by the Academy Trust in consequence of termination, for which the Secretary of State may indemnify the Academy Trust under clauses 5.AA, may include:
- a) staff compensation and redundancy payments;
 - b) compensation payments in respect of broken contracts;
 - c) expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes;
 - d) legal and other professional fees; and
 - e) dissolution expenses.
- 5.DD If this Agreement is terminated, and the Academy Trust owns capital assets which have been partly or wholly funded by HM Government, the Academy Trust must, as soon as possible after the termination date:
- a) transfer a proportion of those capital assets, equal to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government, to a nominee of the Secretary of State to use for educational purposes; or
 - b) if the Secretary of State directs that a transfer under clause 5.DD(a) is not required, pay to the Secretary of State at the termination date (or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of their subsequent disposal) a sum equivalent to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government.
- 5.EE The Secretary of State may:
- a) Waive all or part of the repayment due under sub-clause 5.DD(b) if the Academy Trust obtains his permission to invest the sale proceeds for its charitable purposes; or

- b) direct the Academy Trust to pay all or part of the sale proceeds to the relevant LA.

6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS

Annexes

- 6.A Any annexes to this Agreement form part of and are incorporated into this Agreement.

The Master Agreement

- 6.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, all provisions of the Master Agreement have full force and effect.

General

- 6.C The Academy Trust cannot assign this Agreement.
- 6.D Failure to exercise, or a delay in exercising, any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement (including the right to terminate this Agreement), or a single or partial exercise of such a right or remedy, is not a waiver of, and does not prevent or restrict any initial or further exercise of, that or any other right or remedy.
- 6.E Termination of this Agreement will not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.
- 6.F This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all of which will together constitute the same agreement.
- 6.G This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales, and submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.
- 6.H The Secretary of State agrees that this Agreement shall be interpreted in a

way which is compatible with the provisions of clauses 20A-F and 23A-H (if used) of the Church Supplemental Agreement dated _____ and made between (1) the Secretary of State; (2) the Academy Trust; (3) the Worcester Diocesan Board of Finance Limited; and (4) the Board of Education of the Diocese of Worcester..

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

Executed on behalf of the **Academy Trust** by:

.....

Director

.....

Witness

Name:

Address:

The Corporate Seal of

THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION

affixed to this deed is authenticated by:

.....

Duly Authorised

ANNEXES

7. PUPILS WITH SPECIAL EDUCATION NEEDS (SEN) AND DISABILITIES

“**Statement of SEN**” means a statement made under section 324 of the Education Act 1996.

“**EHC plan**” means an Education, Health and Care plan made under sections 37(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

7.A Except as set out in clause 8 below, the Children and Families Act 2014 imposes duties directly on Academies in respect of pupils with special educational needs, including the admission of pupils with EHC plans. If an Academy Trust considers that a LA should not have named the Academy in an EHC plan, it may ask the Secretary of State to determine whether the LA has acted unreasonably, and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider. The Secretary of State’s determination will be final, subject to any right of appeal which a parent of the child may have to the First Tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) or the Upper Tribunal Administrative Appeals Chamber.

7.B Not used

7.C Not used

7.D Not used.

8. ADMISSION OF PUPILS WITH SEN AND DISABILITIES

8.A The Academy Trust must for each of its Academies, subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State, admit all pupils with a statement of SEN naming the Academy.

8.B Where an LA proposes to name one of the Academies in a statement of SEN, it must give the Academy Trust written notice of this, stating why it considers that Academy to be suitable for the pupil in question. Within 15 days of receipt of the LA’s notice, the Academy Trust must consent to being named, except

where admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for other children, and no reasonable steps could secure compatibility. In deciding whether a child's inclusion would be incompatible with the efficient education of other children or the efficient use of resources, the Academy Trust must have regard to the relevant Guidance issued to maintained schools.

- 8.C If the Academy Trust decides that admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education or the efficient use of resources, it must, within the 15 days, notify the LA in writing, giving its reasons for its decision.
- 8.D The Academy Trust must then seek to establish from the LA whether or not it agrees with this determination. If the LA does not agree with the Academy Trust's response, and names the Academy in the child's statement of SEN, the Academy Trust must admit the child to the school as specified in the statement or otherwise by the LA.
- 8.E If in such case, the Academy Trust considers that the LA should not have named the Academy in the statement, it may ask the Secretary of State to determine whether the LA has acted unreasonably, and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider. The Secretary of State's determination will be final, subject only to any right of appeal which a parent of the child may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) or the Upper Tribunal Administrative Appeals Chamber.
- 8.F If a parent of a child for whom the LA maintains a statement appeals to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability), either for or against the naming of the Academy in the child's statement, then the Tribunal's decision will be binding, even if it is different from that of the Secretary of State.
- 8.G Where it has been finally determined that the Academy be named in a child's statement of SEN, the Academy Trust must admit the child to the Academy, notwithstanding any other admissions requirements in this Agreement.

8.H Clauses 8.A to 8.G only apply insofar as the relevant provisions of the Children and Families Act 2014 relating to SEN and disability do not apply to Academies and Free Schools.



Department
for Education

© Crown copyright 2014

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

Visit: www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2

email: psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

We welcome feedback. If you would like to make any comments about this publication, please email AFSPD.feedback@education.gsi.gov.uk, quoting the title of this document. Specific project queries should be sent to the allocated project lead/lead contact.

About this publication:

enquiries www.education.gov.uk/contactus

download www.gov.uk/government/publications

Reference: DFE-00440-2014



Follow us on Twitter:

[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:

facebook.com/educationgovuk

Schedule 3
Existing Bretforton Village School SFA



Department
for Education

Mainstream academy and free school: supplemental funding agreement: Bretforton Village School

April 2016 (version)

Contents

SUMMARY SHEET	4
Information about the Academy:	4
1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY	8
Definitions and interpretation	8
The Academy	9
2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY	10
Teachers and staff	10
Pupils	10
SEN unit	10
Charging	10
Admissions	10
Curriculum	13
3. GRANT FUNDING	144
Calculation of GAG	144
Other relevant funding	15
4. LAND	16
Version 2: existing leasehold site	16
5. TERMINATION	21
Termination by either party	21
Termination Warning Notice	21
Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection	22
Termination by the Secretary of State	23
Funding and admission during notice period	24

Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust	24
Effect of termination	26
6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS	28
Annexes	28
The Master Agreement	28
General	28
ANNEXES	30
7. PUPILS WITH SPECIAL EDUCATION NEEDS (SEN) AND DISABILITIES	30
8. ADMISSION OF PUPILS WITH SEN AND DISABILITIES	30

SUMMARY SHEET

Information about the Academy:

Name of Academy Trust	Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust
Company number	08943457
Date of Master Funding Agreement	31/01/2018
Name of academy	Bretforton Village School
Opening date	1 February 2018
Type of academy (indicate whether academy or free school)	Mainstream Academy
Religious designation	N/A
Wholly or partly selective	N/A
Name of predecessor school (where applicable)	Bretforton First School
Capacity number	90
Age range	4 - 10
Number of sixth form places	N/A
Number of boarding places	N/A
SEN unit / Resource provision	N/A
Land arrangements (Version 1-7 or other)	Version 2
Address and title number of Land	Bretforton First School, New Street, Bretforton, Evesham, Worcestershire WR11 7JS (Title Number WR99205)

Please confirm which clause variations have been applied or marked as 'Not used'

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
1.I	Only applies to free schools and new provision academies		X
2.A.1	Clause applies where an academy was previously a VC or foundation school designated with a religious character		X
2.C, 2.D	Only applies where the academy has an SEN unit		X
2.E	Only applies where there was a predecessor independent school		X
2.G	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
2.M	Clause applies only to academies and free schools designated with a religious character		X
2.N	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly wholly selective grammar schools		X
2.O	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly partially selective grammar schools		X
2.T	Clause applies to free schools and new provision academies designated with a religious character		X
2.W	Clause only applies where the academy is designated with a religious character		X
2.X	Clause only applies where the academy has not been designated with a religious character	X	
2.Y	Clause applies where an academy was previously a VC school or foundation school designated with a religious character		X
2.Yc)	Sub-clause applies if the academy is designated with a denominational religious		X

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
	character – CE etc. rather than ‘Christian’		
3.A – 3.F	Option 1 applies to converter and sponsored academies: if used delete option 2	X	
3.A – 3.F	Option 2 applies to free schools and new provision academies: if used delete option 1		X
3.H	Clause relating to Start-up only applies in some cases (does not apply to academy converters)		X
3.J	Clause only applies to full sponsored and intermediate sponsored academies with approved Academy Action Plans	X	
3.K	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
5.G.1	Clause applies only to a boarding academy/free school.		X
5.I	Clause only applies to sponsored academies	X	
5.K	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.L	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.M	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.N	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.O	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
6.H	Clause only applies to schools which are designated with a Church of England or Roman Catholic character		X

Please identify any other variations from the model that apply to this academy (e.g. clauses relating to PFI, or any required because the multi academy trust

includes academies designated with different religious characters, or a mixture of those designated with a religious character, and those which are not):

Additional clauses will be supplied by your project lead if needed.

Descriptor	Clause No.	Applied	Not used
Clause for former community school	1J	X	

1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY

1.A This Agreement made between the Secretary of State for Education and Bengeworth Multi Academy Trust is supplemental to the master funding agreement made between the same parties and dated 31/01/2018 (the "**Master Agreement**").

Definitions and interpretation

1.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement will have those same meanings in this Agreement.

1.C The following capitalised words and expressions will have the following meanings:

"The **Academy**" means the Bretforton Village School.

"**Coasting**" has the meaning given by regulations under subsection (3) of section 60B of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 in relation to a school to which that section applies.

"**SEN**" means Special Educational Needs and the expressions "**special educational needs**" and "**special educational provision**" have the meaning set out in sections 20(1) and 21(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

"**Termination Notice**" means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, terminating this Agreement on the date specified in the notice.

"**Termination Warning Notice**" means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, stating his intention to terminate this Agreement.

1.D The Interpretation Act 1978 applies to this Agreement as it applies to an Act of Parliament.

1.E Reference in this Agreement to clauses and annexes will, unless otherwise

stated, be to clauses and annexes to this Agreement.

The Academy

- 1.F The Academy is a mainstream academy as defined in clause 1.4 of the Master Agreement.
- 1.G The Academy Trust will establish and maintain the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement.
- 1.H The Academy Trust will open the Academy on 1 February 2018.
- 1.I Not used.
- 1.J The Academy Trust shall establish for the Academy a Local Governing Body to which it may delegate its powers and functions in relation to the operation of the Academy. The role of the Local Governing Body and the membership of it shall be for the Academy Trust to decide but the Academy Trust will, as a minimum, ensure that:
 - (a) the members of the Local Governing Body shall recognise and support the individual ethos of the Academy as a school not designated as having a religious character and shall maintain the Academy's relationship with the local community within which it is situated and which it serves; and
 - (b) a minimum of two parents of pupils at the Academy (to be elected by the parents of registered pupils of the Academy) shall be members of the Local Governing Body.

2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY

Teachers and staff

2.A Subject to clause 2.4 of the Master Agreement, 7.A of this Agreement and section 67 of the Children and Families Act 2014, the Academy Trust may, in accordance with any relevant Guidance, employ anyone it believes is suitably qualified or is otherwise eligible to plan and prepare lessons and courses for pupils, teach pupils, and assess and report on pupils' development, progress and attainment.

2.A.1 Not used.

Pupils

2.B The planned capacity of the Academy is 90 in the age range 4 – 10. The Academy will be an all ability inclusive school.

SEN unit

2.C Not used.

2.D Not used.

Charging

2.E Not used.

Admissions

2.F Subject to clauses 2.K– 2.L the Academy Trust will act in accordance with, and will ensure that its Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, the School Admissions Code and School Admission Appeals Code published by the DfE (the "Codes") and all relevant admissions law as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools, and with equalities law. Reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" will be deemed to be references to the Academy Trust.

2.G Pupils on roll in a Predecessor School which was a maintained or

independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at that Predecessor School must be admitted to the Academy.

- 2.H The Academy Trust must participate in the local Fair Access Protocol. The Academy Trust must participate in the coordinated admission arrangements operated by the LA in whose area the Academy is situated. If the Academy is a free school, the Academy Trust is not required to participate in coordination for its first intake of pupils.
- 2.I The Academy Trust may determine admission arrangements (subject to consultation in line with the Codes) that give priority for admission to children attracting the Pupil Premium, including the service premium (the “pupil premium admission criterion”), but not above looked-after children and previously looked-after children.
- 2.J Where the Academy Trust applies the pupil premium admission criterion, it must provide information in its admission arrangements about eligibility for the premiums.
- 2.K For the purposes of applying the pupil premium admission criterion only, sections 1.9(f) and 2.4(a) of the School Admissions Code do not apply insofar as they prevent admission authorities from giving priority to children according to the financial or occupational status of parents or using supplementary forms that ask for:
- a) any personal details about their financial status; or
 - b) whether parents are serving in the UK armed forces or were serving in the UK armed forces, and are exercising parental care and responsibility for the child in question.
- 2.L The Secretary of State may:
- a) direct the Academy Trust to admit a named pupil to the Academy:
 - i. following an application from an LA including complying with a

school attendance order as defined in section 437 of the Education Act 1996. Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust; or

ii. where in relation to a specific child or children the Academy Trust has failed to act in accordance with the Codes or this Agreement or has otherwise acted unlawfully; or

b) direct the Academy Trust to amend its admission arrangements where they do not comply with the Codes or this Agreement, or are otherwise unlawful.

2.M Not used.

2.N Not used.

2.O Not used.

2.P The Academy Trust must ensure that parents and 'relevant children' (as described in the **Codes**) have the right to appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Academy Trust. The arrangements for appeals must comply with the Codes as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools. The determination of the appeal panel is binding on all parties.

2.Q Subject to clause 2.R, the meaning of "**relevant area**" for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the relevant LA for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.

2.R If the Academy does not consider the relevant area determined by the LA for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August before the academic year in question for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust and the LA in whose area the Academy is situated in reaching a

decision.

2.S The Office of the Schools Adjudicator (“**OSA**”) will consider objections to the Academy’s admission arrangements (except objections against the agreed variations from the Codes specified at clause 2.K, over which it has no jurisdiction). The Academy Trust must therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy’s admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA. The OSA’s determination of an objection is binding on the Academy and the Academy Trust must make appropriate changes to its admission arrangements as quickly as possible.

2.T Not used.

Curriculum

2.U The Academy Trust must provide for the teaching of religious education and a daily act of collective worship at the Academy.

2.V The Academy Trust must comply with section 71(1)-(6) and (8) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if references to “religious education” and “religious worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with clause 2.X.

2.W Not used.

2.X Subject to clause 2.V, **where the academy has not been designated with a religious character** (in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010):

- a) provision must be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996 and paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;

b) the Academy must comply with section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if it were a community, foundation or voluntary school which does not have a religious character, except that paragraph 4 of that Schedule does not apply. The Academy may apply to the Secretary of State for consent to be relieved of the requirement imposed by paragraph 3(2) of that Schedule.

2.Y Not used.

2.Z The Academy Trust must have regard to any Guidance, further to section 403 of the Education Act 1996, on sex and relationship education to ensure that children at the Academy are protected from inappropriate teaching materials and that they learn the nature of marriage and its importance for family life and for bringing up children. The Academy Trust must also have regard to the requirements in section 405 of the Education Act 1996, as if the Academy were a maintained school.

2.AA The Academy Trust must prevent political indoctrination, and secure the balanced treatment of political issues, in line with the requirements for maintained schools set out in the Education Act 1996, and have regard to any Guidance.

3. **GRANT FUNDING**

Calculation of GAG

3A-3D. Not used.

3.E The Secretary of State will calculate GAG based on the pupil count at the Academy. In order to calculate GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens, the pupil count will be determined on the same basis as that used by the relevant LA for determining the budget of the maintained Predecessor School.

3.F For Academy Financial Years after that referred to in clause 3.E, the basis of

the pupil count for determining GAG will be:

- a) for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
 - b) for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which is in use at the time for maintained schools.
- 3.G The Secretary of State may, at his discretion, adjust the basis of the pupil count to take account of any diseconomies of scale which may affect the Academy if it is operating below the planned capacity in clause 2.B. If such an adjustment is made in any Academy Financial Year, this will not change the basis of the pupil count for calculating the following Academy Financial Year's GAG. If the Secretary of State has indicated that additional grant may be payable in such circumstances, the Academy Trust will bid for this additional grant based on need and providing appropriate supporting evidence. The Secretary of State may accept or refuse the bid at his discretion.
- 3.H Not used.
- 3.I The Secretary of State recognises that if a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice is served, or the Master Agreement is otherwise terminated, the intake of new pupils during the notice period may decline and therefore payments based on the number of pupils attending the Academy may be insufficient to meet the Academy's needs. In these circumstances the Secretary of State may pay a larger GAG in the notice period, to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

Other relevant funding

- 3.J The Academy Trust may apply to the Secretary of State for financial assistance in relation to proposed redundancies at the Academy. In response to such an application, the Secretary of State may at his discretion agree to meet a proportion of the Academy Trust's costs arising from the inclusion of academies in the schedules to the Redundancy Payments (Continuity of

Employment in Local Government) (Modification) Order 1999. The Secretary of State may agree to meet the costs of an employee's prior eligible service, being service before the Academy opened, but the Academy Trust must meet the costs of service after the Academy opened. The Secretary of State's financial assistance in this respect will only be available in the first two years after the Academy opens.

- 3.K The Secretary of State may pay the Academy Trust's costs in connection with the transfer of employees from a Predecessor School under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Such payment will be agreed on a case-by-case basis. The Academy Trust must not budget for such a payment unless the Secretary of State confirms in writing that it will be paid.

Carrying forward of funds

- 3.L Any additional grant made in accordance with clause 3.I, for a period after the Secretary of State has served a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice under this Agreement, or otherwise terminates the Master Agreement, may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the circumstances set out in clause 3.I cease to apply or the Academy closes.

4. LAND

Version 2: existing leasehold site

"Land" means the land at Bretforton First School, New Street, Bretforton, Evesham, Worcestershire WR11 7JS, being the land registered with title number WR99205 and demised by the Lease.

"Lease" means the lease or other occupational agreement between the Academy Trust and a third party (the **"Landlord"**) under which the Academy Trust derives title to the Land.

"Property Notice" means any order, notice, proposal, demand or other requirement issued by any competent authority (including the Landlord) which materially affects the Academy Trust's ability to use the Land for the purposes of the Academy.

Restrictions on Land transfer

4.A The Academy Trust must:

- a) within 28 days of the signing of this Agreement in circumstances where the Land is transferred to the Academy Trust prior to the date of this Agreement, or otherwise within 28 days of the transfer of the Land to the Academy Trust, apply to the Land Registry using Form RX1 for the following restriction (the "Restriction") to be entered in the proprietorship register for the Land:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT;

- b) take any further steps reasonably required to ensure that the Restriction is entered on the proprietorship register;
- c) promptly confirm to the Secretary of State when the Restriction has been registered;
- d) if it has not registered the Restriction, permit the Secretary of State to do so in its place; and
- e) not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify, cancel or remove the Restriction, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust.

Obligations of the Academy Trust

4.B The Academy Trust must keep the Land clean and tidy and make good any damage or deterioration to the Land. The Academy Trust must not do anything to lessen the value or marketability of the Land without the Secretary of State's consent.

4.C The Academy Trust must comply with the Lease and promptly enforce its

rights against the Landlord.

- 4.D The Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:
- a) terminate, vary, surrender, renew, dispose of or agree any revised rent under the Lease;
 - b) grant any consent or licence; or
 - c) create or allow any encumbrance; or
 - d) part with or share possession or occupation; or
 - e) enter into any onerous or restrictive obligations,
- in respect of all or part of the Land.

Option

- 4.E The Academy Trust grants and the Secretary of State accepts an option (the "**Option**") to acquire the Land at nil consideration. The Secretary of State may exercise the Option in writing on termination of this Agreement. If the Option is exercised, completion will take place 28 days after the exercise date in accordance with the Law Society's Standard Conditions of Sale for Commercial Property in force at that date.

Option Notice

- 4.F The Academy Trust:
- a) must, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to the Land Registry on Form AN1 (including a copy of this Agreement) for a notice of the Option (the "**Option Notice**") to be entered in the register, taking any further steps required to have the Option Notice registered and promptly confirming to the Secretary of State when this has been done;
 - b) if it has not registered the Option Notice, agrees that the Secretary of State may apply to register it using Form UN1;

- c) must not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify or remove the Option Notice, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust, and
- d) must, in the case of previously unregistered land, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to register a Class C(iv) land charge in the Land Charges Registry, and send the Secretary of State a copy of the relevant entry within 7 days after the registration has been completed. If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not complied with this clause, he may apply to secure the registration.

Property Notices

4.G If the Academy Trust receives a Property Notice, it must:

- a) send a copy of it to the Secretary of State within 14 days, stating how the Academy Trust intends to respond to it;
- b) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about it;
- c) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to comply with it, and
- d) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State in connection with it.

Breach of Lease

4.H If the Academy Trust is, or if it is reasonably foreseeable that it will be, in material breach of the Lease, the Academy Trust must immediately give written notice to the Secretary of State stating what the breach is and what action the Academy Trust has taken or proposes to take to remedy it, including timescales where appropriate.

4.I After notifying the Secretary of State under clause 4.H, the Academy Trust

must:

- a) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about the breach;
- b) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to remedy or prevent the breach, and
- c) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State to remedy or prevent the breach.

Sharing the Land

4.J Where:

- a) the Secretary of State identifies basic or parental need for additional places in the area in which the Academy is situated; and
- b) the Secretary of State then considers that not all the Land is needed for the operation of the Academy at planned capacity,

the Secretary of State must consult with the Academy Trust to determine whether part of the Land could be demised or sublet to another Academy Trust, as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, for the purpose of that Academy Trust establishing and maintaining an educational institution on the Land.

4.K To the extent the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State agree to part of the Land being demised or sublet in accordance with clause 4.J, the Academy Trust must use its best endeavours to procure either the approval of the Landlord or any necessary amendments to the Lease in order to enable it to share occupation of the Land with the incoming Academy Trust and to provide the incoming Academy Trust with security of tenure over the Land occupied by it, and shall enter into any legal arrangements which the Secretary of State requires for this purpose. The Secretary of State shall meet the necessary and reasonable costs incurred by the Academy Trust in connection with this clause.

4.L For the purposes of clause 4.J:

- a) **a basic need** will arise when the forecast demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated is greater than the existing capacity to provide them;
- b) **a parental need** will arise when the DfE is actually aware of an additional demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated, following representations from parents in that area; and
- c) **planned capacity** has the meaning given in clause 2.B.

5. TERMINATION

Termination by either party

5.A Either party may give at least seven Academy Financial Years' notice to terminate this Agreement. Such termination would take effect on 31 August of the relevant year.

Termination Warning Notice

- 5.B The Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice where he considers that:
- a) the Academy Trust has breached the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement; or
 - b) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low; or
 - c) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed; or
 - d) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened, including due to breakdown of discipline; or
 - e) the Academy is coasting provided he has notified the Academy Trust that it is coasting.

- 5.C A Termination Warning Notice served under clause 5.B will specify:
- a) the action the Academy Trust must take;
 - b) the date by which the action must be completed; and
 - c) the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations, or confirm that it agrees to undertake the specified action.
- 5.D The Secretary of State will consider any representations from the Academy Trust which he receives by the date specified in the Termination Warning Notice. The Secretary of State may amend the Termination Warning Notice to specify further action which the Academy Trust must take, and the date by which it must be completed.
- 5.E If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not responded to the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clause 5.C(c), or has not completed the action required in the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clauses 5.C(a) and (b) (and any further action specified under clause 5.D) he may serve a Termination Notice.

Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection

- 5.F If the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Academy Trust that:
- a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy;
or
 - b) the Academy requires significant improvement
- the Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice, specifying the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations.
- 5.G In deciding whether to give notice of his intention to terminate under clause 5.F, the Secretary of State will have due regard to the overall performance of the Academy Trust.

5.G.1 Not used.

- 5.H If the Secretary of State has served a Termination Warning Notice under clause 5.F and:
- a) has not received any representations from the Academy Trust by the date specified in the notice; or
 - b) having considered the representations made by the Academy Trust remains satisfied that this Agreement should be terminated;

he may serve a Termination Notice.

- 5.I If the Chief Inspector gives a notice referred to in clause 5.F to the Academy Trust within two years after the Academy opened, the Secretary of State may only serve a Termination Warning Notice under clause 5.F if:

- a) the Chief Inspector has held a monitoring inspection under section 8 of the Education Act 2005 later than two years after the Academy opened; and
- b) the Chief Inspector considers that the Academy is not making enough progress towards the removal of the designation referred to in his notice.

Nothing in this clause prevents or prejudices the Secretary of State exercising any other rights arising from or under this Agreement (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any rights under clauses 5.B to 5.E).

Termination by the Secretary of State

- 5.J If the Secretary of State has determined that the Academy will be removed from the Register of Independent Schools and no appeal against that determination is pending, he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.K Not used.

5.L Not used.

5.M Not used.

5.N Not used.

5.O Not used.

Funding and admission during notice period

5.P If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Notice under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy, and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

5.Q If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Warning Notice or a Termination Notice otherwise than under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy (unless the Secretary of State specifies otherwise), and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust

5.R The Secretary of State will, before the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide the Academy Trust with a final funding allocation indicating the level of GAG and EAG to be provided in the next Academy Financial Year (the **“Funding Allocation”**).

5.S If the Academy Trust is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Funding Allocation for the next Academy Financial Year (the **“Critical Year”**) and after taking into account all other resources likely to be available to the Academy, including other funds that are likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Academy Trust (**“All Other Resources”**), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Academy Trust may give written notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement on 31 August before the Critical Year.

5.T Any notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must be provided to the Secretary of State within six weeks of the Secretary of State issuing the Funding Allocation. The notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must specify:

- a) the grounds upon which the Academy Trust's opinion is based, including:
 - i. evidence of those grounds;
 - ii. any professional accounting advice the Academy Trust has received;
 - iii. a detailed statement of steps which the Academy Trust proposes to take to ensure that the running costs of the Academy are reduced such that costs are less than the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources, and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and
- b) the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Academy Trust to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and
- c) a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the "**Projected Budget**").

5.U Both parties will use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.

5.V If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or another date if agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, then that question will be referred to an independent expert (the "**Expert**") for resolution. The Expert's determination will be final and binding on both parties. The Expert will be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the "**Shortfall**").

5.W The Expert will be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional

experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert will be appointed by the President of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert's fees will be borne equally between the parties.

- 5.X The Expert will be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist will be appointed by the Chairman of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust (or any successor or equivalent body). The educational specialist's fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.Y If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State will not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Academy Trust will be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August before the Critical Year. Any such notice will be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert's determination will have been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State will have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

Effect of termination

- 5.Z If this Agreement is terminated, the Academy will cease to be an Academy within the meaning of sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.
- 5.AA Subject to clauses 5.BB and 5.CC, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement under clause 5.A, he will indemnify the Academy Trust. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than under clause 5.A, he may at his discretion indemnify or compensate the Academy Trust.
- 5.BB The amount of any such indemnity or compensation will be determined by the Secretary of State, having regard to representations made to him by the Academy Trust, and will be paid as and when the Secretary of State

considers appropriate.

5.CC The categories of expenditure incurred by the Academy Trust in consequence of termination, for which the Secretary of State may indemnify the Academy Trust under clauses 5.AA, may include:

- a) staff compensation and redundancy payments;
- b) compensation payments in respect of broken contracts;
- c) expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes;
- d) legal and other professional fees; and
- e) dissolution expenses.

5.DD If this Agreement is terminated, and the Academy Trust owns capital assets which have been partly or wholly funded by HM Government, the Academy Trust must, as soon as possible after the termination date:

- a) transfer a proportion of those capital assets, equal to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government, to a nominee of the Secretary of State to use for educational purposes; or
- b) if the Secretary of State directs that a transfer under clause 5.DD(a) is not required, pay to the Secretary of State at the termination date (or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of their subsequent disposal) a sum equivalent to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government.

5.EE The Secretary of State may:

- a) Waive all or part of the repayment due under sub-clause 5.DD(b) if the Academy Trust obtains his permission to invest the sale proceeds for its charitable purposes; or
- b) direct the Academy Trust to pay all or part of the sale proceeds to the relevant LA.

6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS

Annexes

6.A Any annexes to this Agreement form part of and are incorporated into this Agreement.

The Master Agreement

6.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, all provisions of the Master Agreement have full force and effect.

General

6.C The Academy Trust cannot assign this Agreement.

6.D Failure to exercise, or a delay in exercising, any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement (including the right to terminate this Agreement), or a single or partial exercise of such a right or remedy, is not a waiver of, and does not prevent or restrict any initial or further exercise of, that or any other right or remedy.

6.E Termination of this Agreement will not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.

6.F This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all of which will together constitute the same agreement.

6.G This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales, and submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.

6.H Not used.

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

31/1/2018

Executed on behalf of the **Academy Trust** by:



Director



Witness

Name: **KAREN HILLIER**

Address:

113 BRETTON ROAD

BADSEY

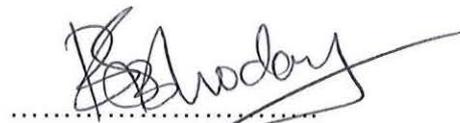
Evesham

WORCS, WR11 7XP.

The Corporate Seal of

THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION

affixed to this deed is authenticated by:



Duly Authorised



ANNEXES

7. PUPILS WITH SPECIAL EDUCATION NEEDS (SEN) AND DISABILITIES

“**Statement of SEN**” means a statement made under section 324 of the Education Act 1996.

“**EHC plan**” means an Education, Health and Care plan made under sections 37(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

7.A Except as set out in clause 8 below, the Children and Families Act 2014 imposes duties directly on Academies in respect of pupils with special educational needs, including the admission of pupils with EHC plans. If an Academy Trust considers that a LA should not have named the Academy in an EHC plan, it may ask the Secretary of State to determine whether the LA has acted unreasonably, and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider. The Secretary of State’s determination will be final, subject to any right of appeal which a parent of the child may have to the First Tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) or the Upper Tribunal Administrative Appeals Chamber.

7.B Not used

7.C Not used

7.D Not used.

8. ADMISSION OF PUPILS WITH SEN AND DISABILITIES

8.A The Academy Trust must for each of its Academies, subject to its right of appeal to the Secretary of State, admit all pupils with a statement of SEN naming the Academy.

8.B Where an LA proposes to name one of the Academies in a statement of SEN, it must give the Academy Trust written notice of this, stating why it considers that Academy to be suitable for the pupil in question. Within 15 days of receipt

of the LA's notice, the Academy Trust must consent to being named, except where admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for other children, and no reasonable steps could secure compatibility. In deciding whether a child's inclusion would be incompatible with the efficient education of other children or the efficient use of resources, the Academy Trust must have regard to the relevant Guidance issued to maintained schools.

- 8.C If the Academy Trust decides that admitting the child would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education or the efficient use of resources, it must, within the 15 days, notify the LA in writing, giving its reasons for its decision.
- 8.D The Academy Trust must then seek to establish from the LA whether or not it agrees with this determination. If the LA does not agree with the Academy Trust's response, and names the Academy in the child's statement of SEN, the Academy Trust must admit the child to the school as specified in the statement or otherwise by the LA.
- 8.E If in such case, the Academy Trust considers that the LA should not have named the Academy in the statement, it may ask the Secretary of State to determine whether the LA has acted unreasonably, and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider. The Secretary of State's determination will be final, subject only to any right of appeal which a parent of the child may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) or the Upper Tribunal Administrative Appeals Chamber.
- 8.F If a parent of a child for whom the LA maintains a statement appeals to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability), either for or against the naming of the Academy in the child's statement, then the Tribunal's decision will be binding, even if it is different from that of the Secretary of State.
- 8.G Where it has been finally determined that the Academy be named in a child's statement of SEN, the Academy Trust must admit the child to the Academy, notwithstanding any other admissions requirements in this Agreement.

8.H Clauses 8.A to 8.G only apply insofar as the relevant provisions of the Children and Families Act 2014 relating to SEN and disability do not apply to Academies and Free Schools.

© Crown copyright 2014

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

Visit: www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2

email: psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

We welcome feedback. If you would like to make any comments about this publication, please email AFSPD.feedback@education.gsi.gov.uk, quoting the title of this document. Specific project queries should be sent to the allocated project lead/lead contact.

About this publication:

enquiries www.education.gov.uk/contactus

download www.gov.uk/government/publications

Reference: DFE-00440-2014



Follow us on Twitter:
[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:
facebook.com/educationgovuk

Schedule 4

Amended Master Funding Agreement



Department
for Education

Academy and free school: master funding agreement Bengeworth Multi- Academy Trust

December 2020 v5

Contents

SUMMARY SHEET	4
1.INTRODUCTION	5
Definitions of types of Academies:	5
Other defined terms:	6
General Obligations of the Academy Trust	10
Governance	12
2.RUNNING OF THE ACADEMIES	14
Length of school day and year	14
Teachers and staff	14
School meals	16
Pupil Premium	16
Charging	17
Exclusions	18
Curriculum	18
Assessment	20
3.GRANT FUNDING	22
Recurrent Expenditure Grants	22
Capital Grant	23
General Annual Grant (GAG)	25
Earmarked Annual Grant (EAG)	27
Arrangements for paying GAG and EAG	27
Other relevant funding	28
4.FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS	29
General	29
Application of the Academies Financial Handbook	30
Budgeting for funds	30
Carrying forward of funds	31
Annual accounts and audit	32
Keeping financial records	33
Access to financial records	33
Acquiring and disposing of Publicly Funded Assets	33
Retention of proceeds from the disposal of capital assets	34

Transactions outside the usual planned range	34
Borrowing	35
5.COMPLAINTS	35
6.TERMINATION	37
Termination by the Secretary of State	37
Change of Control of the Academy Trust	39
7.OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS	40
Information	40
Access by the Secretary of State's Officers	40
Information Sharing with Local Authorities – Statutory Responsibilities	41
Notices	42
Contractual	43

SUMMARY SHEET

Information about the Academy Trust:

Name of Academy Trust	Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust
Address	Bengeworth CE Academy, Kings Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU
Company Number	08943457
Contact details for the Chair of Charity Trustees	Chair of Trustees, Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust, Bengeworth CE Academy, Kings Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU.

Please confirm whether additional clauses have been included (e.g., PFI clauses which will be supplied by your project lead if needed)

Descriptor	Clause No.	Applied	Not used

1. INTRODUCTION

Introduction and definitions

- 1.1 This Agreement is between the Secretary of State for Education (the “**Secretary of State**”) and Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust (the “**Academy Trust**”), and is an academy agreement as defined by section 1 of the Academies Act 2010.
- 1.2 The Academy Trust is a company limited by guarantee incorporated in England and Wales with company number 08943457. The Academy Trust is a charity and its directors are the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust.
- 1.3 In order for the Academy Trust to establish and run a number of Academies in England, according to the provisions of the Academies Act 2010, and in order for the Secretary of State to make payments to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust must meet the requirements in this Agreement and in each **Supplemental Agreement** that has been entered into by the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State in respect of each Academy.
- 1.4 In this Agreement, and (except as expressly provided otherwise) in each Supplemental Agreement, the capitalised words and expressions listed below will have the following meanings:-

Definitions of types of Academies:

An “**Academy**” is a school or educational institution established and run in accordance with the Academies Act 2010, and where this Agreement refers collectively to “**Academies**” run by the Academy Trust, this may include any of the following types of school or educational institution:

A “**Free School**” means an Academy which is a new educational institution within the meaning of section 9(1)(a) of the Academies Act 2010;

A “**Mainstream Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the requirements set out in section 1A(1) of the Academies Act 2010;

An “**Alternative Provision Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the requirements set out in section 1C(1) of the Academies Act 2010;

A “**Special Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the criteria set out in section 1A(2) of the Academies Act 2010;

A “**Sponsored Academy**” will be (unless otherwise stated) a Mainstream Academy which is established pursuant to an Academy Order under section 4 of the Academies Act 2010, which will be designated as a Sponsored Academy within the Supplemental Agreement applicable to that Academy, and as such certain conditions may apply to it;

“**Studio School**” means a type of Mainstream Academy, principally for pupils and students aged between 14 and 19, which places an emphasis on such pupils and students obtaining employability skills through project-based learning;

“**University Technical College**” means a type of Free School, principally for pupils and students aged between 14 and 19, which provides technical education with the emphasis on a particular industry or scientific sector;

A “**16-19 Academy**” means an Academy or a Free School which meets the requirements set out in section 1B(1) of the Academies Act 2010.

Other defined terms:

“**16-19 Funding Guidance**” means the guidance published by the ESFA and amended from time to time, on behalf of the Secretary of State.

“**Academies Financial Handbook**” means the document with that title published by the ESFA and amended from time to time, on behalf of the Secretary of State.

“**Academy Financial Year**” means the year from 1 September to 31 August, or a different period notified in writing by the Secretary of State.

“**Articles**” means the Academy Trust’s articles of association.

“Business Day” means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or any day which is a bank holiday with the meaning given to that expression in the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971.

“Charity Trustees” means the directors of the Academy Trust who are responsible for the general control and management of the administration of the Academy Trust.

“Chief Inspector” means Her Majesty’s Chief Inspector of Education, Children’s Services and Skills.

“Commissioner” means LAs and/or schools referring pupils to an Alternative Provision Academy for admission under the legal powers set out in the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

“Control” means the power of an organisation or individual (‘A’) to ensure that the affairs of another organisation are conducted in accordance with A’s wishes, whether through share ownership or voting power, by agreement, because of powers conferred by articles of association or any other document, or otherwise; and

“Controls” will be construed accordingly.

“EHC Plan” means an education, health and care plan made under section 37 of the Children and Families Act 2014.

“ESFA” means the Education and Skills Funding Agency.

“Guidance” means guidance issued by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, as amended from time to time.

“Independent School Standards” means the independent school standards prescribed under section 157 of the Education Act 2002.

“LA” means a local authority.

“Local Governing Body” means the committee (if any) established by the Academy Trust in relation to an Academy or Academies, within the Academy Trust, in accordance with the Articles.

“Parents” means parents¹ or guardians.

“Predecessor School” means the school which the Academy in question replaced, where applicable.

“Publicly Funded Assets” means (a) assets or property funded wholly or partly using payments made by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, and (b) publicly funded land as defined in paragraph 22(3) of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

“Pupil Premium” means an amount equivalent to the pupil premium as defined in the School and Early Years Finance (England) Regulations 2013

“Pupil Referral Unit” means any school established in England and maintained by a LA which is specially organised to provide education for children falling within section 19(1) of the Education Act 1996.

Any reference to **“Secretary of State”** includes a reference to the ESFA acting on the Secretary of State’s behalf.

“Secretary of State’s consent” means the Secretary of State’s specific, prior written consent, which will not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

“SEN” means special educational needs and the expressions **“special educational needs”** and **“special educational provision”** have the meaning set out in sections 20(1) and 21(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

“Start-Up Period” has the meaning as defined in the relevant Supplemental Agreement.

“Supplemental Agreement” means an agreement supplemental to this Agreement for any Academy which the Academy Trust agrees to establish and maintain and the Secretary of State agrees to fund, which is substantially in the form of the supplemental funding agreement entered into by both parties at the time that this Agreement is signed.

¹ Parent has the meaning set out in section 576 of the Education Act 1996

“Teaching Staff” means teachers and the principal or head teacher employed at the Academy.

“Termination Notice” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, terminating this Agreement and each Supplemental Agreement on the date specified in the notice.

- 1.5 The Interpretation Act 1978 applies to this Agreement as it applies to an Act of Parliament.
- 1.6 A reference in this Agreement to any party or body includes its successors.
- 1.7 Any words following the terms ‘include’, ‘including’ or ‘in particular’ are by way of illustration, not limitation.
- 1.8 A reference in this Agreement to land includes any buildings or structures on the land.
- 1.9 A reference in this Agreement to pupils includes students at a 16-19 Academy.
- 1.10 Where any legislation, legal requirement or published guidance is referred to, unless otherwise stated, the following terms should be interpreted as follows:
 - a) “school” refers to the relevant Mainstream Academy, Alternative Provision Academy, or Special Academy, and “educational institution” refers, where the context so admits, to a 16-19 Academy;
 - b) the “head teacher” may refer to the Academy’s head teacher or principal;
 - c) references to the “governing body” or “responsible authorities” will be taken to refer to the Academy Trust; and
 - d) references to registered pupils will be treated as references to registered pupils at the Academy.

- 1.11 References in this Agreement or any Supplemental Agreement to any named legislation, legal requirement or published guidance should be taken to include any amendment to or replacement of it.
- 1.12 If any questions arise about how this Agreement should be interpreted, the answer will be decided by the Secretary of State, after discussion with the Academy Trust.

General Obligations of the Academy Trust

1.13 In order for the Academy Trust to establish and run independent schools and/or educational institutions in England, according to the terms of the Academies Act 2010, and in order for the Secretary of State to make payments to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust must meet the conditions and requirements set out in this Agreement, and in each Supplemental Agreement for an Academy for which payments are claimed. In particular, the Academy Trust must ensure the Academies it runs meet the applicable requirements as follows:

- a) for **Mainstream Academies**, those specified in Section 1A of the Academies Act 2010;
- b) for **Alternative Provision Academies**, those specified in Section 1C of the Academies Act 2010;
- c) for **16-19 Academies**, those specified in Section 1B of the Academies Act 2010;
- d) for **Special Academies**, those specified in section 1A(2) of the Academies Act 2010, and:
 - i. the Academy Trust must ensure special educational provision is made at each of the Special Academies for one or more categories of SEN. These categories may include, but are not limited to: Specific Learning Difficulties, Moderate Learning Difficulties, Severe Learning Difficulties, Profound and Multiple Learning Difficulties, Social, Emotional and Mental Health Needs,

Speech Language and Communication Needs, Autistic Spectrum Disorder, Visual Impairment, Hearing Impairment, Multi-Sensory Impairment, Physical Disability.

- ii. the Academy Trust may not refuse to admit a child or young person whose EHC Plan names one of the Special Academies on the sole basis that some, or all, of the child's or young person's SEN do not feature in the categories referred to in clause 1.13(d)(i) of this agreement.
- iii. the Academy Trust must comply with all of the obligations imposed upon special academies by legislation.

1.14 To the extent that it is compatible with the Academy Trust fulfilling its charitable purpose of advancing education in the United Kingdom for the public benefit, the Academy Trust must ensure that each of its Academies is at the heart of its community, promoting community cohesion and sharing facilities with other schools and/or other educational institutions and the wider community.

1.15 The Academy Trust must conduct its Academies within the terms and requirements of:

- a) the Articles;
- b) any legislation or legal requirement that applies to academies, including the Independent School Standards and legislation about meeting the needs of pupils with SEN and disabilities;
- c) the Academies Financial Handbook, as stated in clauses 4.6 to 4.8; and
- d) this Agreement, and any and all Supplemental Agreements.

1.16 The Academy Trust must, as soon as is reasonable, establish an appropriate mechanism for the receipt and management of donations for the purpose of its aims as specified in the Articles.

- 1.17 The Academy Trust must obtain the Secretary of State's consent before applying to have an Academy designated as a school with religious character. The Secretary of State may at his discretion refuse or consent to the Academy Trust making such an application.
- 1.18 Unless an Academy operated by the Academy Trust is designated as a school with a religious character under the Religious Character of Schools (Designation Procedure) (Independent Schools) (England) Regulations 2003, it agrees to be bound by the prohibition against discrimination in section 85 of the Equality Act 2010.
- 1.19 The Academy Trust is not required to publish information under this Agreement, or any Supplemental Agreement, if to do so would breach its obligations under data protection legislation.
- 1.20 The Academy Trust must ensure that its Academies meet the needs of individual pupils, including pupils with SEN and disabilities.

Governance

- 1.21 The Academy Trust will be governed by a board comprising the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust (the "**Board of Charity Trustees**").
- 1.22 The Board of Charity Trustees must have regard to any Guidance on the governance of academy trusts.
- 1.23 The Academy Trust must ensure that it engages with the relevant Local Governing Body (if any) or representatives of each Academy, and that arrangements are in place for matters relating to the functioning of each Academy to be brought to the attention of the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust.
- 1.24 The Academy Trust must provide to the Secretary of State the names of all new or replacement members of the Academy Trust, stating the date of their appointment and, where applicable, the name of the member they replaced as soon as is practicable and in any event within 14 days of their appointment.

- 1.25 The Academy Trust must not appoint any new or replacement members until it has first informed them, and they have agreed, that their names will be shared with the Secretary of State to enable him to assess their suitability.
- 1.26 If the Academy Trust establishes and maintains a Free School, it must, in addition to its obligations under clauses 1.24 and 1.25:
- a) provide to the Secretary of State the names of all new or replacement Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust, stating whether they have been appointed or elected, the date of their appointment or election and, where applicable, the name of the Charity Trustees they replaced as soon as is practicable and in any event within 14 days of their appointment or election; and
 - b) not appoint or elect any new or replacement Charity Trustees until it has first informed them, and they have agreed, that their names will be shared with the Secretary of State to enable him to assess their suitability.
- 1.27 The Academy Trust must not amend or remove the provisions in its Articles relating to the appointment or election or the resignation or removal of Charity Trustees or members (“the Governance Articles”) without the Secretary of State’s consent.
- 1.28 Before any change to the Governance Articles is proposed the Academy Trust must give notice to the Secretary of State of:
- a) the proposed amendment or removal; and;
 - b) the reason for it.
- 1.29 If the Secretary of State consents to the proposed changes, the Academy Trust shall approve any changes to the Articles as soon as reasonably practicable and provide the Secretary of State with a copy of the amended Articles and the resolution(s) approving them.

2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMIES

Length of school day and year

- 2.1 The length of the school day and year will be the responsibility of the Academy Trust and for the purpose of this paragraph “school” also means a **16-19 Academy**.

Teachers and staff

- 2.2 In complying with the Independent School Standards, the Academy Trust must require enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service (“DBS”) certificates as appropriate for members of staff, supply staff, members of the Academy Trust, individual Charity Trustees and the chair of the Board of Charity Trustees.
- 2.3 The Academy Trust must promptly submit to the Secretary of State, on request, the information contained in any enhanced DBS certificate that it receives.
- 2.4 The Academy Trust must designate a staff member at each Academy as responsible for promoting the educational achievement of registered pupils at the Academy who are being looked after by a LA, or are no longer looked after by a LA because of an adoption, special guardianship or child arrangements order, or because they have been adopted from ‘state care’ outside England and Wales, and in doing so must comply with the law, regulations and guidance that apply to maintained schools. The Academy Trust must ensure the designated person undertakes appropriate training and has regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State.
- 2.5 Teachers’ pay and conditions of service at the Academies are the responsibility of the Academy Trust.
- 2.6 The Academy Trust has a statutory duty to ensure that all Teaching Staff employed at each Academy have access to the Teachers’ Pension Scheme (TPS) and, in so doing, must comply with the TPS Regulations. That includes ensuring that only staff who predominantly carry out teaching work are

enrolled in the TPS – teaching work is planning and preparing lessons and courses for pupils; delivering lessons to pupils; assessing the development, progress and attainment of pupils; and reporting on the development, progress and attainment of pupils. The Board of Charity Trustees will need to give careful consideration as to whether or not executive leaders meet the TPS eligibility requirements. Details of the full range of employer duties are on the TP Employer Hub.

- 2.6.1 Access to the TPS must also be in accordance with HM Treasury’s published [Fair Deal guidance](#) which sets out how pensions’ issues are to be dealt with when staff are compulsorily transferred from the public sector to independent providers. The Academy Trust has a crucial role in the successful administration of the TPS and must comply with the requirements of the scheme administrator to provide accurate and timely information and also to provide pension contributions.
- 2.7 The Academy Trust must ensure that all affected staff employed by the Academy Trust other than Teaching Staff have access to the Local Government Pension Scheme and, in doing so, the Academy Trust must comply with the requirements of the scheme and with Fair Deal for staff pensions guidance published by HM Treasury. These requirements do not apply if an individual chooses to opt out in line with the relevant legal provisions.
- 2.8 Where a member of the Teaching Staff employed at an Academy applies for a teaching post at another academy, a maintained school or a further education institution, the Academy Trust must at the request of the board of governors or academy trust of that other educational institution:
- a) advise in writing whether or not, in the previous two years, there has been any formal capability considerations or proceedings for that teacher at the Academy or the Predecessor School;
 - b) give written details of the concerns which gave rise to any such consideration of that teacher’s capability, the duration of the proceedings and their outcome.

School meals

- 2.9 Subject to clause 2.12, the Academy Trust must provide school lunches and free school lunches in accordance with the provisions of sections 512(3) and 512ZB(1) of the Education Act 1996 as if references in sections 512 and 512ZB to a LA were to the Academy Trust and as if references to a school maintained by a LA were to any of its Academies.
- 2.10 The Academy Trust must comply with school food standards legislation as if its Academies were maintained schools.
- 2.11 Where the Academy Trust provides milk to pupils, it must be provided free of charge to pupils who would be eligible for free milk if they were pupils at a maintained school.
- 2.12 Clauses 2.9 to 2.11 do not apply to 16-19 Academies. For **16-19 Academies**, the Academy Trust must comply with any Guidance in relation to free meals in the further education sector, as far as it applies to those Academies.

Pupil Premium

- 2.13 For all of its Academies eligible for Pupil Premium, and for each Financial Year, the Academy Trust must publish, on the Academy's website, information about:
- a) the amount of Pupil Premium allocation that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
 - b) what it intends to spend the Pupil Premium allocation on;
 - c) what it spent its Pupil Premium allocation on in the previous Academy Financial Year;
 - d) the impact of the previous year's Pupil Premium allocation on educational attainment.
- 2.14 For all of its Academies eligible for Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium funding, and for each Academy Financial Year, the Academy Trust must publish, on the Academy's website, information about:

- a) the amount of Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant that it will receive during the Academy Financial Year;
- b) what it intends to spend its Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant on;
- c) what it spent its Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant on in the previous Academy Financial Year;
- d) the impact of the previous year's Year 7 literacy and numeracy catch-up premium grant on educational attainment, and how that effect was assessed.

Charging

- 2.15 For all its Academies except 16-19 Academies, the Academy Trust must comply with sections 402, 450-457 and 459-462 of the Education Act 1996 with regard to public examinations, charging, providing information, inviting voluntary contributions and recovering civil debts, as if its Academies were maintained schools.
- 2.16 There must be no charge for admission to or attendance at any of the Academies, and the Academies will only charge pupils where the law allows maintained schools to charge.
- 2.17 Clause 2.16 does not prevent the Academy Trust receiving funds from a LA or a charity in respect of the admission and attendance of a pupil with SEN to an Academy.
- 2.18 Notwithstanding clause 2.16, the Academy Trust may charge people who are not registered pupils at one of its Academies for education or use of facilities.
- 2.19 Where an Academy provides a pupil with board and lodging, the Academy Trust must not charge the parent of that pupil more than the cost to the Academy Trust of providing the board and lodging, except as required by the Fees, Charges and Levies guidance in HM Treasury's publication 'Managing Public Money'.

Exclusions

2.20 In respect of **Mainstream Academies, and Special Academies which admit pupils without EHC Plans, under clause 2.D of the Special School: supplemental funding agreement**, the Academy Trust must, if asked to by a LA, enter into an agreement which has the effect that where:

- a) the Academy admits a pupil who has been permanently excluded from a maintained school, the Academy itself or another academy with whom the LA has a similar agreement; or
- b) the Academy Trust permanently excludes a pupil from the Academy;

then the arrangements for payment will be the same as if the Academy were a maintained school, under Regulations made under section 47 of the Schools Standards and Framework Act 1998.

Curriculum

2.21 The curriculum is the responsibility of the Academy Trust.

2.22 The Academy Trust must ensure that the curriculum provided in each Academy to pupils up to the age of 16 is balanced and broadly based. In respect of **Mainstream, Special Academies, UTCs and Studio Schools**, the Academy Trust must ensure that the curriculum includes English, mathematics, science and (subject to the provisions in clause 2.V of the Mainstream academy and free school: supplemental funding agreement), (subject to the provisions in clause 2.V of the UTC and Studio School supplemental funding agreement) and (subject to the provisions in clause 2.HH-JJ of the Special School: supplemental funding agreement) religious education. In respect of **Alternative Provision Academies** the Academy Trust must ensure that the curriculum includes English, mathematics and science.

2.23 The Academy Trust must publish information in relation to the current curriculum provision at each Academy on that Academy's website, including:

- a) the content of the curriculum;

- b) its approach to the curriculum;
- c) if applicable, the GCSE options and other Key Stage 4 qualifications offered by each Academy and, if applicable, any other qualifications offered by each Academy;
- d) the names of any phonics or reading schemes in operation for Key Stage 1 if applicable; and
- e) how Parents (including Parents of prospective pupils) and Commissioners (if applicable) can obtain further information about that Academy's curriculum.

2.24 The Academy Trust must not allow any view or theory to be taught as evidence-based if it is contrary to established scientific or historical evidence and explanations. This clause applies to all subjects taught at an Academy.

2.25 The Academy Trust must provide for the teaching of evolution as a comprehensive, coherent and extensively evidenced theory. In respect of any **Alternative Provision Academies** and **16-19 Academies**, the Academy Trust must do this where relevant to the curriculum.

2.26 The Academy Trust must ensure the Academy actively promotes the fundamental British values of democracy, the rule of law, individual liberty, and mutual respect and tolerance of those with different faiths and beliefs.

2.26A The Academy Trust must ensure the Academy promotes principles that support equality of opportunity for all.

2.27 The Academy Trust must ensure that careers guidance is provided at each of its Academies, in accordance with the requirements on maintained schools in the Education Act 1997. The Academy Trust must;

- a) Provide independent careers guidance in accordance with Department for Education statutory guidance that has been developed in line with the eight Gatsby benchmarks of Good Career Guidance.

- b) Ensure that there is an opportunity for a range of education and training providers to access registered pupils in years 8-13 for the purpose of informing them about approved technical education qualifications or apprenticeships.
- c) Publish information about their careers programme and details of their named careers leader in accordance with The School Information (England) Regulations 2008 and the accompanying Department for Education guidance, "What academies, Free schools and colleges should publish online"

Assessment

2.28 The Academy Trust must:

- a) ensure that pupils and students at each of its Academies are entered for examinations, in line with the requirements on maintained schools in section 402 of the Education Act 1996;
- b) comply with the relevant Guidance, as it applies to maintained schools, in respect of each **Mainstream Academy**, and each **Special Academy** to ensure that pupils take part in assessments, and in teacher assessments of pupils' performance; and must do so for each **Alternative Provision Academy** unless there are exceptional reasons to do otherwise;
- c) ensure that students at each **16-19 Academy** take part in assessments of students' performance appropriate to the qualifications offered;
- d) report on assessments as the Secretary of State requires, or provide any information on assessments, on the same basis that maintained schools are required to provide the information;
- e) for all Key Stages, allow monitoring and moderation of the Academy's assessment arrangements as required by the Secretary of State.

2.29 Unless specifically approved in writing by the Secretary of State, the Academy Trust must not use General Annual Grant (GAG) to offer any course of education or training which leads to a qualification, if that qualification is not

approved by the Secretary of State for the purpose of section 96 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.

2.30 Unless informed by the Secretary of State that alternative information must be published, the Academy Trust must ensure that the following information is published on the relevant Academy's website for each **Mainstream Academy**, for each **Alternative Provision Academy**, and where relevant for each **Special Academy**, and in respect of sub-paragraph b) where relevant for each **Studio School**:

- a) if applicable, the Academy's most recent Key Stage 2 performance measures as published by the Secretary of State in the School and College Performance Tables, broken down as follows:
 - i. progress score in reading
 - ii. progress score in writing
 - iii. progress score in mathematics
 - iv. percentage of pupils who achieved the expected standard in reading, writing and mathematics
 - v. percentage of pupils who achieved at a higher standard in reading, writing and mathematics
 - vi. average 'scaled score' in reading
 - vii. average 'scaled score' in mathematics

- b) if applicable, the Academy's most recent Key Stage 4 performance measures as published by the Secretary of State in the School and College Performance Tables, broken down as follows:
 - i. Progress 8 score
 - ii. percentage of pupils entering the English Baccalaureate (EBacc)

- iii. English Baccalaureate (EBacc) Average Point Score
 - iv. Attainment 8 score
 - v. percentage of pupils achieving grade 5 or above in GCSE English and mathematics
 - vi. percentage of pupils staying in education or going into employment after Key Stage 4 (pupil destinations)
- c) where applicable, the Academy's most recent 16-18 performance measures, as published by the Secretary of State in the School and College Performance Tables, broken down as follows:
- i. progress
 - ii. attainment
 - iii. English and mathematics progress
 - iv. retention
 - v. destinations
- d) information about where and how Parents (including Parents of prospective pupils) can access the most recent report about the Academy published by the Chief Inspector; and
- e) information as to where and how Parents (including Parents of prospective pupils) can access the School and College Performance Tables published by the Secretary of State.

2.31 The Academy Trust must ensure that, in relation to any **16-19 Academies**, any performance information requested by the Secretary of State is published on the Academy's website.

2.32 The Secretary of State may direct any Academy to participate in international education surveys, under the Education Act 1996, as if it were a maintained school.

3. **GRANT FUNDING**

Recurrent Expenditure Grants

- 3.1 The Secretary of State will pay grants towards Recurrent Expenditure, and may pay grants towards Capital Expenditure, for each Academy.
- 3.2 “**Recurrent Expenditure**” means any money spent on the establishment, conduct, administration and maintenance of an Academy which does not fall within Capital Expenditure.
- 3.3 In respect of Recurrent Expenditure, the Secretary of State will pay **General Annual Grant (“GAG”)** and may additionally pay **Earmarked Annual Grant (“EAG”)**. These are two separate and distinct grants.
- 3.4 Except with the Secretary of State’s consent, the Academy Trust must not make commitments to spending which will have substantial implications for future grant. No decision by the Academy Trust will commit the Secretary of State to paying any particular amount of grant.

Capital Grant

- 3.5 The Secretary of State may pay a grant (“**Capital Grant**”) to the Academy Trust for the purpose of spending on items of Capital Expenditure.
- 3.6 “**Capital Expenditure**” means expenditure on:
- a) acquiring land and buildings;
 - b) erecting, enlarging, improving or demolishing any building including fixed plant, installation, wall, fence or other structure, or any playground or hard standing;
 - c) installing electrical, mechanical or other services other than necessary repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
 - d) buying vehicles;

- e) installing and equipping premises with furnishings and equipment, other than necessary repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- f) installing and equipping premises with computers, networking for computers, operating software and ICT equipment, other than necessary updates or repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- g) providing and equipping premises, including playing fields and other facilities for social activities and physical recreation other than necessary repairs and maintenance due to normal wear and tear;
- h) works of a permanent character other than the purchase or replacement of minor day-to-day items;
- i) any major repairs or replacements which are specified as capital expenditure in any grant letter relating to them;
- j) such other items (whether like or unlike any of the foregoing) of a substantial or enduring nature which the Secretary of State agrees are capital expenditure for the purposes of this Agreement;
- k) professional fees properly and reasonably incurred in connection with the provision of any of the above;
- l) VAT and other taxes payable on any of the above.

3.7 Any Capital Grant funding that may be made available to the Academy Trust will be notified to it by the Secretary of State.

3.8 The Academy Trust must spend Capital Grant only on items of Capital Expenditure approved by the Secretary of State and in accordance with conditions specified by the Secretary of State. Further, the Academy Trust must provide evidence that it has obtained all planning and other consents required for any proposed building and infrastructure development to be funded using Capital Grant.

- 3.9 In order to receive payments of Capital Grant, the Academy Trust must provide supporting invoices and certificates in the format specified by the Secretary of State.
- 3.10 The Academy Trust must provide an account of Capital Grant received and associated spending on Capital Expenditure using Capital Grant in the Academy Trust's financial statements and any financial reports or returns that the Secretary of State may require.
- 3.11 If in its use of Capital Grant the Academy Trust does not comply with this Agreement or any of the conditions specified by the Secretary of State, or the project does not accord with the original specification or has not been completed, the Secretary of State may at his discretion not make any further payments of Capital Grant and require the Academy Trust to repay all or part of the Capital Grant.

General Annual Grant (GAG)

- 3.12 The Secretary of State will pay GAG to the Academy Trust towards the normal running costs or capital expenditure of each of its Academies, including:
- a) teachers' salaries and related costs (including pension contributions, full and part-time Teaching Staff and payments in respect of seconded teachers);
 - b) non-teaching staff salaries and related costs (including pension contributions);
 - c) employees' expenses;
 - d) buying, maintaining, repairing and replacing teaching and learning materials and other educational equipment, including books and stationery;
 - e) buying, maintaining, repairing and replacing other assets including ICT equipment and software, sports equipment and laboratory equipment and materials;

- f) examination fees;
- g) repairs, servicing and maintenance of buildings (including redecoration, heating, plumbing, lighting etc.); maintenance of grounds (including boundary fences and walls); insurance; cleaning materials and contract cleaning; water and sewerage; fuel and light (including electricity and gas); rents; rates; purchase, maintenance, repairs and replacement of furniture and fittings;
- h) medical equipment and supplies;
- i) staff development (including in-service training);
- j) curriculum development;
- k) the costs of providing school meals for pupils (including the cost of providing free school lunches to pupils who are eligible to receive them), and any discretionary grants to pupils to meet the cost of pupil support, including support for pupils with SEN and disabilities;
- l) administration; and
- m) establishment expenses and other institutional costs.

3.13 GAG for each Academy Financial Year for each **Mainstream Academy** and **Special Academy** will include:

- a) funding equivalent to that which would be received by a maintained school with similar characteristics, determined by the Secretary of State and taking account of the number of pupils at the Academy;
- b) funding to cover necessary functions which would be carried out by the relevant LA if the Academy were a maintained school;
- c) payment of any additional specific grants made available to maintained schools, where the Academy meets the criteria for those grants, and at the Secretary of State's discretion; and

- d) funding for any other costs to the Academy which the Secretary of State considers necessary.

3.14 The Academy Trust must use GAG only for maintaining, carrying on, managing and developing the Academies in accordance with this Agreement and the relevant Supplemental Agreement, except where the Secretary of State has given specific consent for the Academy Trust to use GAG for another charitable purpose.

3.15 In particular (but without limitation) the Academy Trust must not use GAG for:

- a) education and training for adults who are not pupils of the Academies, other than staff professional development and governance training and development;
- b) nursery provision for which Parents are charged a fee;
- c) nursery provision to children outside of the relevant Academy's age range as stated in the applicable Supplemental Agreement;
- d) Children's Centres;
- e) any additional cost of providing sport and leisure facilities for a purpose not permitted in clause 3.14.

Earmarked Annual Grant (EAG)

3.16 The Secretary of State may pay EAG to the Academy Trust for specific purposes, agreed between the Secretary of State and the Academy Trust, and as described in the relevant funding letter. The Academy Trust must spend EAG only in accordance with that letter.

3.17 Where the Academy Trust is seeking a specific EAG for any Academy Financial Year, it must send a letter outlining its proposals and the reasons for the request to the Department for Education.

Arrangements for paying GAG and EAG

- 3.18 Before each Academy Financial Year, the Secretary of State will notify the Academy Trust of the GAG and EAG amounts in respect of each Academy which, subject to parliamentary approval, the Secretary of State plans for that Academy Financial Year and how these have been calculated.
- 3.19 The amounts of GAG for an Academy Financial Year will be determined annually by the Secretary of State, and notified to the Academy Trust in a funding letter sent before the relevant Academy Financial Year begins (the **“Annual Letter of Funding”**).
- 3.20 Amounts of EAG will be notified to the Academy Trust wherever possible in the Annual Letter of Funding or as soon as is practicable afterwards.
- 3.21 The Annual Letter of Funding will, as well as stating the grant amounts, set out how these have been calculated. It will not include grants which cannot be calculated in time because there is not enough information, or for other administrative reasons. Any such grants will be notified as soon as practicable.
- 3.22 The Secretary of State will pay GAG in monthly instalments on or before first day of each month (“the relevant month”), to fund the salaries and other payroll costs of all monthly paid employees and all other costs payable during the relevant month. The detailed arrangements for payment will be set out in the Annual Letter of Funding, or an equivalent.
- 3.23 If GAG or EAG is miscalculated:
- a) because of a mistake by the Secretary of State, which leads to an underpayment to the Academy Trust, the Secretary of State will correct the underpayment in the same or subsequent Academy Financial Years;
 - b) because the Academy Trust provided incorrect information, which leads to an underpayment to the Academy Trust, the Secretary of State may

correct the underpayment in the same or subsequent Academy Financial Years;

- c) for any reason which results in an overpayment to the Academy Trust, the Secretary of State may recover any overpaid grant in the same or subsequent Academy Financial Years, having considered all the relevant circumstances and taking into account any representations from the Academy Trust.

Other relevant funding

- 3.24. The Academy Trust may receive additional funding from a LA under an agreement with that LA for the provision of support for pupils with SEN who require high levels of such support. The Academy Trust must ensure that all support required under that agreement is provided for those pupils.

4. FINANCIAL AND ACCOUNTING REQUIREMENTS

General

- 4.1 In order for the Secretary of State to provide grant funding to the Academy Trust, the Academy Trust must be fulfilling the financial and reporting requirements in this Agreement, and any Supplemental Agreements.
- 4.2 In its conduct and operation, the Academy Trust must apply financial and other controls which meet the requirements of regularity, propriety and value for money.
- 4.3 The Academy Trust must appoint an accounting officer and must notify the Secretary of State of that appointment. The Academy Trust must assign to the accounting officer the responsibilities of the role set out in the Academies Financial Handbook and HM Treasury's publication 'Managing Public Money'.
- 4.4 The Academy Trust must abide by the requirements of, and have regard to the guidance for, charities and Charity Trustees issued by the Charity Commission and, in particular, the Charity Commission's guidance on 'Protecting Charities from Harm'. Any references in this document which

require Charity Trustees to report to the Charity Commission should instead be interpreted as reporting to the body or person appointed as the principal regulator under the Charities Act 2011.

- 4.5 The Academy Trust must abide by the requirements of the current 16-19 Funding Guidance published by the Secretary of State, in respect of any provision for students who are above compulsory school age until the academic year in which they reach the age of 19.
- 4.5A If the Secretary of State pays any grant to or on behalf of the Academy Trust, in respect of any Free Schools that the Academy Trust establishes and maintains, which includes an amount to cover VAT, the Academy Trust shall, having paid the VAT, promptly submit a VAT reclaim application to Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs (HMRC). Any failure by the Academy Trust to submit a VAT reclaim application to HMRC, or to pursue the application diligently, or to repay any reclaimed amount to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following receipt will be taken into account by the Secretary of State in:
- a) calculating and paying any subsequent grant to the Academy Trust; or
 - b) adjusting GAG payable to the Academy Trust in subsequent Academy Financial Years.

Application of the Academies Financial Handbook

- 4.6 In relation to the use of grant paid to the Academy Trust by the Secretary of State, the Academy Trust must follow the requirements of, and have regard to the guidance in, the Academies Financial Handbook.
- 4.7 The Academy Trust must have adequate insurance cover or opt in to the Department for Education's arrangements as set out in the Academies Financial Handbook.
- 4.8 The Academy Trust must submit information about its finances to the Secretary of State in accordance with the Academies Financial Handbook, or as otherwise specified by the Secretary of State.

Budgeting for funds

- 4.9 The Academy Trust must balance its budget from each Academy Financial Year to the next. For the avoidance of doubt, this does not prevent the Academy Trust from:
- a) subject to clause 4.14, carrying a surplus from one Academy Financial Year to the next; or
 - b) carrying forward from previous Academy Financial Years sufficient cumulative surpluses on grants from the Secretary of State to meet an in-year deficit on such grants in a subsequent financial year, in accordance with clauses 4.14-4.16 and 3.L of the relevant Supplemental Agreement; or
 - c) incurring an in-year deficit on funds from sources other than grants from the Secretary of State in any Academy Financial Year, provided it does not affect the Academy Trust's responsibility to ensure that its Academies balance their respective overall budgets from each Academy Financial Year to the next.
- 4.10 The Academy Trust may spend or accumulate funds from private sources or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State for the benefit of the Academy Trust as it sees fit. Any surplus from private or public sources other than grants from the Secretary of State must be separately identified in the Academy Trust's accounts.
- 4.11 For clarity, and in accordance with the intent of parity of funding with LA maintained schools, in circumstances where a Predecessor School had a deficit balance and the Department for Education has settled this with the relevant LA, that amount will be recovered from the Academy Trust's GAG over a period not normally exceeding 3 years (unless the Secretary of State in his discretion decides otherwise) after the Academy opened.
- 4.12 The Academy Trust's budget must be approved for each Academy Financial Year by the Board of Charity Trustees.

4.13 The approved budget must be submitted to the Secretary of State in a form, and by a date, to be notified by the Secretary of State.

Carrying forward of funds

4.14 At the end of any Academy Financial Year the Academy Trust may carry forward unspent GAG from previous Academy Financial Years without limit (unless a limit is specified in the Academies Financial Handbook, or otherwise as specified in writing by the Secretary of State, in which case that limit will apply).

4.15 The Academy Trust must use any GAG carried forward only for purposes of GAG as set out in this agreement, or otherwise as specified in the Academies Financial Handbook or in writing by the Secretary of State.

4.16 Any additional grant provided for an Academy's Start-Up Period may be carried forward, without limitation or deduction, until the Start-Up Period ends.

4.17 Any unspent grant not allowed to be carried forward under clauses 4.14-4.16 and 3.L of the relevant Supplemental Agreement may be taken into account in the payment of subsequent grant.

Annual accounts and audit

4.18 The Academy Trust must prepare and file with Companies House the annual reports and accounts required by the Companies Act 2006.

4.19 In addition, the Academy Trust must prepare its annual reports and accounts for each Academy Financial Year:

- a) in accordance with the Charity Commission's 'Accounting and Reporting by Charities: Statement of Recommended Practice', as if the Academy Trust was a registered charity; and
- b) otherwise as the Secretary of State directs.

4.20 The Academy Trust's accounts must be audited annually by independent auditors appointed in line with the Academies Financial Handbook.

- 4.21 The accounts must carry an audit report stating whether, in the opinion of the auditors, the accounts show a true and fair view of the Academy Trust's affairs. The accounts must also be supported by such other audit reports, relating to the use of grants and other matters, as the Secretary of State directs.
- 4.22 The Academy Trust's annual report must include the names of all members of the Academy Trust who served during the year.
- 4.23 The Academy Trust's annual reports and accounts, and the auditor's reports, must be submitted to the Secretary of State by 31 December each Academy Financial Year, or as otherwise specified by the Secretary of State. The Academy Trust must publish on its website its annual reports and accounts, current memorandum of association, Articles, this Agreement, any Supplemental Agreements and the names of its Charity Trustees and members. The Secretary of State may also publish the Academy Trust's annual reports and accounts, and the audit report, as he sees fit.

Keeping financial records

- 4.24 The Academy Trust must keep proper accounting records. Statements of income and expenditure, statements of cash flow and balance sheets must be produced in such form and frequency as the Secretary of State directs.

Access to financial records

- 4.25 The books of accounts and all relevant records, files and reports of the Academy Trust, including those relating to financial controls, must be open at all reasonable times to officials of the Department for Education and the National Audit Office, and to their agents and contractors, for inspection or carrying out value for money studies. The Academy Trust must give those officials and contractors reasonable assistance with their enquiries. For the purposes of this clause 'relevant' means in any way relevant to the provision and use of grants provided by the Secretary of State under this Agreement.

4.26 The Secretary of State may, at his expense, instruct auditors to report to him on the adequacy and effectiveness of the Academy Trust's accounting systems and internal controls to standards determined by the Secretary of State, and to make recommendations for improving the Academy Trust's financial management.

Acquiring and disposing of Publicly Funded Assets

4.27 In relation to Publicly Funded Assets, the Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:

- a) acquire or dispose of freehold land; or
- b) take up or grant a leasehold of land; or
- c) dispose of any other class of capital assets.

except as expressly permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook, and subject to Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Academies Act 2010.

4.28 The Academy Trust must give the Secretary of State 30 days' notice of its intention to take any of the actions in clause 4.27 (a) – (c) regardless of whether the Secretary of State's consent is required.

Retention of proceeds from the disposal of capital assets

4.29 Except as permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook, if the Academy Trust sells capital assets which were acquired or enhanced wholly or partly using payments made by or on behalf of HM Government the Academy Trust must pay to the Secretary of State, at his request, an amount of the sale proceeds equivalent to the proportion of the original cost of the acquisition or enhancement which was met by or on behalf of HM Government.

4.30 If the Academy Trust sells a capital asset which was transferred to it for no or nominal consideration from a LA, a Predecessor School or a Predecessor School's foundation, the Academy Trust must, if required by the Secretary of State, pay all or part of the sale proceeds to the LA or to the Secretary of

State, taking into account the amount of the proceeds to be reinvested by the Academy Trust.

Transactions outside the usual planned range

4.31 In relation to Publicly Funded Assets, the Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:

- a) give any guarantees, indemnities or letters of comfort, except such as are given in normal contractual relations;
- b) write off any debts or liabilities owed to it; or
- c) offer to make any special payments as defined in HM Treasury's publication 'Managing Public Money' (including ex gratia payments, staff severance payments and compensation payments)

if the value of those transactions would be above any threshold specified in the Academies Financial Handbook.

4.32 The Academy Trust must give the Secretary of State 30 days' notice (or such shorter period as the Secretary of State may agree) of its intention to take any of the actions in clause 4.31 (a) – (c) regardless of whether the Secretary of State's consent is required.

4.33 The Academy Trust must promptly notify the Secretary of State of any loss arising from suspected theft or fraud in line with the requirements in the Academies Financial Handbook, or otherwise specified by the Secretary of State.

Borrowing

4.34 Except as permitted in the Academies Financial Handbook, the Academy Trust must not borrow against Publicly Funded Assets, or so as to put Publicly Funded Assets at risk, without the Secretary of State's consent.

5. **COMPLAINTS**

5.1 With regards to a **Mainstream Academy**, a **Special Academy** an **Alternative Provision Academy** or a **16-19 Academy**, if a complaint is made about matters arising wholly or partly before the Academy opened, and all or part of that complaint was investigated by the Local Government Ombudsman under Part III of the Local Government Act 1974 ("**Part III**"), or could have been investigated under Part III if the Predecessor School/Pupil Referral Unit had remained a maintained school/Pupil Referral Unit, the Academy Trust:

- a) must abide by the provisions of Part III as if the Academy were a maintained school/Pupil Referral Unit;
- b) agrees that the Secretary of State will have the power to investigate the subject of the complaint as if it had taken place after the Academy opened; and
- c) must act in accordance with any recommendation from the Secretary of State as if that recommendation had been made under Part III and the Academy were a maintained school/Pupil Referral Unit.

5.2 With regards to a **Mainstream Academy**, a **Special Academy** or a **16-19 Academy**, if the Secretary of State could have given an order or a direction under section 496 or 497 of the Education Act 1996 to the governing body of the Predecessor School and that order or direction related to matters occurring within the 12 months immediately before the Academy opened, the Academy Trust:

- a) agrees that the Secretary of State may give orders or directions to the Academy Trust as though the Academy were a maintained school and sections 496 and 497 applied to the governing body of that maintained school; and
- b) must act in accordance with any such order or direction from the Secretary of State.

- 5.3 If at the time of the opening of any **Mainstream Academy, Special Academy, Alternative Provision Academy** or **16-19 Academy** the investigation of a complaint made to the governing body of the Predecessor School/Pupil Referral Unit has not yet been completed, the Academy Trust must continue to investigate that complaint in accordance with the complaints procedures established by that governing body.
- 5.4 If a complaint is made to the Academy Trust about matters arising in whole or in part during the 12 months prior to the opening of any **Mainstream Academy**, any **Special Academy** any **Alternative Provision Academy** or any **16-19 Academy** the Academy Trust agrees to investigate that complaint as if the matter complained of had taken place after the Academy opened.

6. **TERMINATION**

- 6.1 This Agreement will commence on the date of delivery and continue until terminated in accordance with clauses 6.2-6.7, or until all Supplemental Agreements have terminated.

Termination by the Secretary of State

- 6.2 The Secretary of State may serve a Termination Notice if any of the following events occur, or if he considers that there is a serious risk that any of them may occur:
- a) the Academy Trust calls a formal or informal meeting of its creditors or enters into any formal or informal composition or arrangement with its creditors; or
 - b) the Academy Trust proposes a voluntary arrangement within Section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (as amended); or
 - c) the Academy Trust is unable to pay its debts within the meaning of Section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986 provided that, for the purposes of this clause, Section 123 (1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 will have effect as if £10,000 was substituted for £750. The Academy Trust will not be deemed unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this clause if

any such demand as is mentioned in the said Section is being contested in good faith by the Academy Trust; or

- d) the Academy Trust has a receiver and manager (except those appointed by the Charity Commission under the Charities Act 2011), administrator or administrative receiver appointed over all or part of its undertakings, assets or income; or
- e) any distraint, execution or other process is levied or enforced on any of the Academy Trust's property and is not paid out, withdrawn or discharged within 15 Business Days; or
- f) the Academy Trust has passed a resolution for its winding up; or
- g) an order is made for the winding up or administration of the Academy Trust.

6.3 The Academy Trust must promptly notify the Secretary of State, with an explanation of the circumstances, after receiving any petition which may result in an order for its winding up or administration.

6.4 If

- a) any Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust refuses to consent to any checks required under this Agreement, or as otherwise requested by the Secretary of State; or
- b) the Secretary of State determines that any Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust is unsuitable,

the Secretary of State may:

- i. direct the Academy Trust to ensure that the Charity Trustee or member resigns or is removed within 42 days, failing which the Secretary of State may serve a Termination Notice; or
- ii. serve a Termination Notice.

6.5 For the purposes of clause 6.4 a Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust will be “unsuitable” if that Charity Trustee or member:

- a) has been convicted of an offence;
- b) has been given a caution in respect of an offence;
- c) is subject to a relevant finding in respect of an offence; or
- d) has engaged in relevant conduct,

as a result of which, the Secretary of State considers that that Charity Trustee or member is unsuitable to take part in the management of the Academies.

6.6 For the purposes of clause 6.5:

- a) a Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust will be subject to a “relevant finding” in respect of an offence if:
 - i. that Charity Trustee or member has been found not guilty of the offence by reason of insanity;
 - ii. that Charity Trustee or member has been found to be under a disability and to have done the act charged against them in respect of the offence; or
 - iii. a court outside the United Kingdom has made a finding equivalent to that described in paragraphs (i) and (ii) above.
- b) “relevant conduct” is conduct by a Charity Trustee or member of the Academy Trust which is:
 - i. aimed at undermining the fundamental British values of democracy, the rule of law, individual liberty and mutual respect and tolerance of those with different faiths and beliefs; or
 - ii. found to be in breach of professional standards by a professional body; or

- iii. so inappropriate that, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, it makes that Charity Trustee or member unsuitable to take part in the management of the Academy.

Change of Control of the Academy Trust

- 6.7 The Secretary of State may at any time, subject to clause 6.8, serve a Termination Notice if there is a change:
- a) in the Control of the Academy Trust; or
 - b) in the Control of a legal entity that Controls the Academy Trust.
- 6.8 Where a person ('P') is a member or director of a body corporate (as a corporation sole or otherwise) by virtue of an office, no change of Control arises merely by P's successor becoming a member or director in P's place.
- 6.9 The Academy Trust must promptly notify the Secretary of State if there is a proposed or actual change of Control of the Academy Trust, or of a legal entity that Controls the Academy Trust.
- 6.10 When notifying the Secretary of State further to clause 6.9, the Academy Trust must seek his agreement that, if he is satisfied with the change of Control, he will not exercise his right to terminate this Agreement further to clause 6.7.

7. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS

Information

- 7.1 The Academy Trust must promptly provide to the Secretary of State any information about the Academy Trust, or any of its Academies, which he regards as necessary to fulfil his role and responsibilities.
- 7.2 The Secretary of State will give the Academy Trust any information it reasonably requires of him for the running of its Academies.

Access by the Secretary of State's Officers

- 7.3 The Academy Trust must allow Department for Education officials to enter any of its Academies at any reasonable time. All records, files and reports relating to the running of each Academy must be available to them at any reasonable time. Two Department for Education officials may attend and speak at any meetings of each Academy's Local Governing Body, of the Academy Trust's Board of Charity Trustees or any other meetings of the Charity Trustees of the Academy Trust, but will withdraw from any discussion of an Academy's or the Academy Trust's relationship with the Secretary of State or any discussion of bids for funding to the Secretary of State.
- 7.4 The following documents must be provided to the Secretary of State or any person nominated by the Secretary of State on request:
- a) the agenda for every meeting of the Board of Charity Trustees, any Local Governing Body or any committee to which the Board of Charity Trustees delegates any of its functions;
 - b) the draft minutes of every such meeting, if they have been approved by the chairman of that meeting;
 - c) the signed minutes of every such meeting; and
 - d) any report, document or other paper considered at any such meeting.
- 7.5 The Academy Trust may exclude from items provided under clause 7.4 any content relating to:
- a) a named teacher or other person employed, or proposed to be employed, at any Academy;
 - b) a named pupil or student at, or candidate for admission to, any Academy; and
 - c) any matter which the Academy Trust reasonably believes should remain confidential.

Information Sharing with Local Authorities – Statutory Responsibilities

7.5A The Academy Trust must provide:

- a) the name, address and date of birth of the pupil or student;
- b) the name and address of a parent of the pupil or student;
- c) information in the institution's possession about the pupil or student (except if the pupil or student concerned (in the case of a pupil or student who has attained the age of 16) or a parent of the pupil or student concerned (in the case of a pupil or student who has not attained the age of 16) has instructed the Academy Trust not to provide information of that kind);

upon request under section 14 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 from a LA (for the purpose of enabling or assisting it to exercise its functions under Part 1 of that Act); or

upon request under section 72 of that Act from a body providing services under sections 68 or 70(1)(b) of the Act (for the purposes of providing such services).

Notices

7.6 A notice or communication given to a party in connection with this Agreement or any Supplemental Agreement:

- a) must be in writing (excluding email, except where agreed in advance) and in English;
- b) must be delivered by hand or sent by pre-paid first-class post or other next Business Day delivery service;
- c) will be deemed to have been received:
 - i. if delivered by hand, at the time when a delivery receipt is signed or when the notice is left at the address in paragraph (d), or
 - ii. if posted, at 9.00am on the second Business Day after posting;and

- d) must be sent to the party for the attention of the contact and at the address listed as follows (or to a different contact or address previously notified to the sending party, the change taking effect five Business Days after deemed receipt of the notice):

Name of party	Position of contact	Address
Secretary of State	Head of Academies Division	Department for Education, Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London, SW1P 3BT
Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust	Chair of Trustees	Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust, Bengeworth CE Academy, Kings Road, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU.

Contractual

- 7.7 This Academy Trust cannot assign this Agreement.
- 7.8 Failure to exercise, or delay in exercising, any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement (including the right to terminate this Agreement), or a single or partial exercise of such a right or remedy, is not a waiver of, and does not prevent or restrict any initial or further exercise of, that or any other right or remedy.
- 7.9 Termination of this Agreement will not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties to this Agreement existing at termination.

- 7.10 This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered will constitute a duplicate original, but all of which will together constitute the same agreement.
- 7.11 This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) will be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales, and submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on

Executed on behalf of the **Academy Trust** by:

.....

Director

in the
presence of

.....

Witness

Name:

Address:

The Corporate Seal of

THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION

affixed to this deed is authenticated by:

Duly Authorised



Department
for Education

© Crown copyright 2020

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

visit www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2

email psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

We welcome feedback. If you would like to make any comments about this publication, please email AFSPD.feedback@education.gov.uk, quoting the title of this document. Specific project queries should be sent to the allocated project lead/lead contact.

About this publication:

enquiries www.education.gov.uk/contactus

download www.gov.uk/government/publications

Reference: DfE-00213-2020



Follow us on Twitter:
[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:
facebook.com/educationgovuk

Schedule 5

Amended Bengeworth CE Academy SFA



Department
for Education

Mainstream academy and free school: supplemental funding agreement Bengeworth CE Academy

December 2020 v7

Contents

Information about the Academy:	4
1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY	8
Definitions and interpretation	8
The Academy	9
2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY	10
Teachers and staff	10
Pupils	11
SEN Unit or Resourced Provision	11
Charging	11
Admissions	11
3. GRANT FUNDING	15
Calculation of GAG	15
Other relevant funding	16
4. LAND	17
5. TERMINATION	23
Termination by either party	23
Termination Warning Notice	23
Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection	24
Termination by the Secretary of State	25
Funding and admission during notice period	25
Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust	25
Effect of termination	28
6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS	29

Annexes	29
The Master Agreement	29
General	29
Information Sharing with Local Authorities – Statutory Responsibilities	30
ANNEXES	33
ADMISSION OF CHILDREN AND YOUNG PEOPLE WITH EDUCATION, HEALTH AND CARE PLANS	33

SUMMARY SHEET

Information about the Academy:

Name of Academy Trust	Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust
Company number	08943457
Date of Master Funding Agreement	
Name of Academy	Bengeworth CE Academy
Opening date	1 June 2014
Type of academy (indicate whether academy or free school)	Mainstream Academy
Religious designation	Church of England
Wholly or partly selective	Not applicable
Name of predecessor school (where applicable)	Bengeworth First School
Capacity number (of statutory school age places) (if the Academy has a nursery provision, please provide a breakdown of capacity for nursery pupils and statutory school age places)	540 and 60 nursery places
Age range (including nursery provision where the nursery is part of the school)	3 to 10 years
Number of sixth form places	Not applicable
Number of boarding places	Not applicable
SEN unit / Resource provision	Not applicable
Land arrangements (Version 1-8 or other)	Versions 2 and 3
Academy and title number of Land (and Temporary Site)	Kings Road, Bengeworth, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU Title numbers: WR131155 and WR99174

Please confirm which clause variations have been applied or marked as 'Not used'

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
1.I	Only applies to free schools and new provision academies		X
2.A.1	Clause applies where an academy was previously a VC or foundation school designated with a religious character	X	
2.C, 2.D	Only applies where the Academy has an SEN unit or Resourced Provision		X
2.E	Only applies where there was a predecessor independent school		X
2.E.1	Only applies to free Schools with nursery provision	X	
2.G	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
2.M	Clause applies only to academies and free schools designated with a religious character	X	
2.N	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly wholly selective grammar schools		X
2.O	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly partially selective grammar schools		X
2. P.1	Clause only applies to free schools or academy converter schools where there was a predecessor maintained school	X	
2.T	Clause applies to free schools and new provision academies designated with a religious character		X
2.W	Clause only applies where the Academy is designated with a religious character but was not previously a VC school or foundation school designated with a		X

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
	religious character (in which case use clause 2.Y instead). Also use 2.W where an academy was previously a VC school but has gone through a significant change process to adopt VA characteristics in parallel with converting to an academy		
2.X	Clause only applies where the Academy has not been designated with a religious character		X
2.Y	Clause only applies where an academy was previously a VC school or foundation school designated with a religious character and should be used instead of clause 2.W. Where an academy was previously a VC school but has gone through a significant change process to adopt VA characteristics in parallel with converting to an academy, use clause 2.W instead.	X	
2.Yc)	Sub-clause applies if the Academy is designated with a denominational religious character – CE etc. rather than ‘Christian’	X	
3.A – 3.F	Option 1 applies to converter and sponsored academies: if used delete option 2	X	
3.A – 3.F	Option 2 applies to free schools and new provision academies: if used delete option 1		X
3.H	Clause relating to Start-up only applies in some cases (does not apply to academy converters)		X
3.I.1	Only applies to Free schools with nursery provision	X	
3.J	Clause only applies to full sponsored and intermediate sponsored academies with approved Academy Action Plans		X
3.K	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
5.G.1	Clause applies only to a boarding		X

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
	academy/free school.		
5.I	Clause only applies to sponsored academies		X
5.K	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.L	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.M	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.N	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.O	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
6.H	Clause only applies to schools which are designated with a Church of England or Roman Catholic character	X	

Please identify any other variations from the model that apply to this Academy (e.g. clauses relating to PFI, or any required because the multi academy trust includes academies designated with different religious characters, or a mixture of those designated with a religious character, and those which are not):

Additional clauses will be supplied by your project lead if needed.

Descriptor	Clause No.	Applied	Not used
Mixed MAT Governance	1.J	X	

1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY

1.A This Agreement made between the Secretary of State for Education and Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust is supplemental to the master funding agreement made between the same parties and dated (the “**Master Agreement**”).

Definitions and interpretation

1.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement will have those same meanings in this Agreement.

1.C The following capitalised words and expressions will have the following meanings:

“The **Academy**” means Bengeworth CE Academy.

“**Coasting**” has the meaning given by regulations under subsection (3) of section 60B of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 in relation to a school to which that section applies.

“**Funded Hours**” means the current applicable government funded entitlement to free childcare.

“**Guidance**” means guidance issued by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, as amended from time to time.

“**SEN**” means special educational needs and has the meaning set out in sections 20(1) and 21(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

“**Termination Notice**” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, terminating this Agreement on the date specified in the notice.

“**Termination Warning Notice**” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, stating his intention to terminate this Agreement.

1.D The Interpretation Act 1978 applies to this Agreement as it applies to an Act of Parliament.

1.E Reference in this Agreement to clauses and annexes will, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes to this Agreement.

The Academy

1.F The Academy is a Mainstream Academy as defined in clause 1.4 of the Master Agreement.

1.G The Academy Trust will establish and maintain the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement.

1.H The Academy Trust opened the Academy on 1 June 2014.

1.I Not used

Governance

1.J The Company shall establish for the Academy a Local Governing Body to which it may delegate any of its powers and functions in relation to the operation of the Academy. The role of the Local Governing Body and the membership of it shall be for the Company to decide, but the Company will ensure that the Academy operates in a way which honours the characteristics that the Academy has by virtue of clause 2M of this Agreement and will, as a minimum, ensure that:

a) no more than 25% of the members of the Local Governing Body shall be appointed for the purpose of securing that the Academy is conducted in accordance with the principles, practices and tenets of the Church of England; and

b) a minimum of two parents of a pupil at the Academy (to be elected by the parents of registered pupils of the Academy) shall be a member of the Local Governing Body.

2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY

Teachers and staff

2.A Subject to clause 2.A.2 and Annex A of this Agreement and section 67 of the Children and Families Act 2014, the Academy Trust may, in accordance with any relevant Guidance, employ anyone it believes is suitably qualified or is otherwise eligible to plan and prepare lessons and courses for pupils, teach pupils, and assess and report on pupils' development, progress and attainment.

2.A.1 The Academy Trust shall in relation to:

- a) any person who may apply for a position as an employee or to be otherwise engaged by the Academy Trust, and
- b) any employee with whom the Academy Trust enters into a contract of employment or a contract for services,

act in accordance with and hereby agrees to be bound by section 124AA of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 ("SSFA"), so far as those provisions apply to, and as if the Academy Trust were, a voluntary controlled or foundation school designated by an order under section 69(3) of the SSFA as a school having a religious character. For the avoidance of doubt, the Academy Trust agrees and acknowledges that section 124AA of the SSFA shall not therefore apply to it in relation to the persons referred to at (a) and (b) above.

2.A.2 The Academy Trust must designate a staff member at the Academy as responsible for promoting the educational achievement of registered pupils at the Academy who are being looked after by a la, or are no longer looked after by a la because of an adoption, special guardianship or child arrangements order, or because they have been adopted from 'state care' outside England and Wales, and in doing so must comply with the law, regulations and Guidance that apply to maintained schools. The Academy Trust must ensure the designated person undertakes appropriate training and has regard to any Guidance.

Pupils

2.B The planned capacity of the Academy is 540 and the age range is 3 to 10 years, plus nursery provision of 60 places. For the avoidance of doubt, notwithstanding that an individual applicant's age might be outside the specified age range of the Academy, the Academy is not prevented from considering an application made by the child's Parent(s) in order to comply with the relevant paragraph of the Schools Admissions Code ('Admission of children outside their normal age group'), to request that the child be admitted to the school outside of the child's normal age group. Where such a request is agreed, the child should be educated in an existing year group. The Academy will be an all ability inclusive single/mixed sex school.

SEN Unit or Resourced Provision

2.C Not used

2.D Not used

Charging

2.E Not Used

2.E.1 Clause 2.16 of the Master Agreement does not prevent the Academy Trust charging fees for nursery provisions outside the Funded Hours.

Admissions

2.F Subject to clauses 2.L and 2.M the Academy Trust will act in accordance with, and will ensure that its Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, the School Admissions Code and School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education (the "Codes") and all relevant admissions law as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools, and with equalities law. Reference in the Codes or legislation to "admission authorities" will be deemed to be references to the Academy Trust.

2.G Pupils on roll in a Predecessor School which was a maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All

children already offered a place at that Predecessor School must be admitted to the Academy.

2.H The Academy Trust must participate in the local Fair Access Protocol. The Academy Trust must participate in the coordinated admission arrangements operated by the LA in whose area the Academy is situated. If the Academy is a free school, the Academy Trust is not required to participate in coordination for its first intake of pupils.

2.I Not used

2.J Not used

2.K Not used

2.L The Secretary of State may:

a) direct the Academy Trust to admit a named pupil to the Academy:

i. following an application from a LA including complying with a school attendance order as defined in section 437 of the Education Act 1996. Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust; or

ii. where in relation to a specific child or children the Academy Trust has failed to act in accordance with the Codes or this Agreement or has otherwise acted unlawfully; or

b) direct the Academy Trust to amend its admission arrangements where they do not comply with the Codes or this Agreement, or are otherwise unlawful.

2.M The Academy is an Academy designated with a Church of England religious character. The relevant religious authority is Diocese of Worcester.

2.N Not used

2.O Not used

- 2.P The Academy Trust must make arrangements to ensure an independent appeals panel is established for the Academy and its clerk and members are trained to act in accordance with the Codes. The Academy Trust must ensure that parents and ‘relevant children’ (as described in the Codes) are informed of their right to appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Academy Trust. The arrangements for appeals must comply with the Codes as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools. The determination of the Independent Appeal Panel is binding on all parties.
- 2.P.1 The Academy Trust will treat any decision of an Independent Appeal Panel constituted further to arrangements made by the admission authority of a Predecessor School under section 94 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as binding on the Academy Trust, as though the Academy Trust had made the decision subject to the appeal.
- 2.Q Subject to clause 2.R, the meaning of “**relevant area**” for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the relevant LA for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.
- 2.R If the Academy does not consider the relevant area determined by the LA for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August before the academic year in question for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust and the LA in whose area the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.
- 2.S The Office of the Schools Adjudicator (“OSA”) will consider objections to the Academy’s admission arrangements (except objections against any agreed derogations from the provisions of the Codes specified in this Agreement, over which it has no jurisdiction). The Academy Trust must therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy’s admission arrangements, that

objections should be submitted to the OSA. The OSA's determination of an objection is binding on the Academy and the Academy Trust must make appropriate changes to its admission arrangements to give effect to the Adjudicator's decision within two months of the decision (or by 28 February following the decision, whichever is sooner), unless an alternative timescale is specified by the Adjudicator.

2.T Not used

Curriculum

2.U The Academy Trust must provide for the teaching of religious education and a daily act of collective worship at the Academy.

2.V The Academy Trust must comply with section 71(1)-(6) and (8) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if references to "religious education" and "religious worship" in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with clause 2.Y.

2.W Not used

2.X Not used

2.Y Subject to clause 2.V, the requirements for religious education and collective worship are as follows:

- a) subject to paragraph 3 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, which will apply as if the Academy were a foundation school or voluntary controlled school with a religious character, provision must be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996;
- b) the Academy Trust must comply with section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy

were a foundation school with a religious character or a voluntary school, and as if references to “the required collective worship” were references to collective worship in accordance with the tenets and practices of the Academy’s specified religion or religious denomination;

- c) the Academy Trust must ensure that the quality of the religious education given to pupils at the Academy and the contents of the Academy’s collective worship, given in accordance with the tenets and practices of its specific religion or religious denomination, is inspected. The inspection must be conducted by a person chosen by the Academy Trust and the Academy Trust must secure that the inspection complies with statutory provisions and regulations which would apply if the Academy were a foundation or voluntary school designated as having a religious character.

2.Z The Academy Trust must comply with paragraph 2A of the Schedule to The Education (Independent School Standards) Regulations 2014 in relation to the provision of Relationships Education, Relationships and Sex Education and Health Education.

2.AA The Academy Trust must prevent political indoctrination, and secure the balanced treatment of political issues, in line with the requirements for maintained schools set out in the Education Act 1996, and have regard to any Guidance.

3. GRANT FUNDING

Calculation of GAG

3A-3D. Not used.

3.E The Secretary of State will calculate GAG based on the pupil count at the Academy. In order to calculate GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens, the pupil count will be determined on the same basis as that used by the relevant LA for determining the budget of the maintained Predecessor School.

- 3.F For Academy Financial Years after that referred to in clause 3.E, the basis of the pupil count for determining GAG will be:
- a) for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
 - b) for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which is in use at the time for maintained schools.
- 3.G The Secretary of State may, at his discretion, adjust the basis of the pupil count to take account of any diseconomies of scale which may affect the Academy if it is operating below the planned capacity in clause 2.B. If such an adjustment is made in any Academy Financial Year, this will not change the basis of the pupil count for calculating the following Academy Financial Year's GAG. If the Secretary of State has indicated that additional grant may be payable in such circumstances, the Academy Trust will bid for this additional grant based on need and providing appropriate supporting evidence. The Secretary of State may accept or refuse the bid at his discretion.
- 3.H Not used
- 3.I The Secretary of State recognises that if a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice is served, or the Master Agreement is otherwise terminated, the intake of new pupils during the notice period may decline and therefore payments based on the number of pupils attending the Academy may be insufficient to meet the Academy's needs. In these circumstances the Secretary of State may pay a larger GAG in the notice period, to enable the Academy to operate effectively.
- 3.I.1. For the avoidance of doubt, the pupil number count for the purposes of determining GAG excludes nursery provision pupils. Clauses 3.A-3.I must be read with this exclusion in mind.

Other relevant funding

- 3.J Not used

3.K The Secretary of State may pay the Academy Trust's costs in connection with the transfer of employees from a Predecessor School under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Such payment will be agreed on a case-by-case basis. The Academy Trust must not budget for such a payment unless the Secretary of State confirms in writing that it will be paid.

Carrying forward of funds

3.L Any additional grant made in accordance with clause 3.I, for a period after the Secretary of State has served a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice under this Agreement, or otherwise terminates the Master Agreement, may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the circumstances set out in clause 3.I cease to apply or the Academy closes.

4. LAND

"Land" means the land at Kings Road, Bengeworth, Evesham, Worcestershire, WR11 3EU, being the land registered with title numbers WR131155 and WR99174 and demised by the Lease.

"Lease" means the lease, any subsequent variations to the lease or other occupational agreement between the Academy Trust and a third party (the **"Landlord"**) under which the Academy Trust derives title to the Land.

"Property Notice" means any order, notice, proposal, demand or other requirement issued by any competent authority (including the Landlord) which materially affects the Academy Trust's ability to use the Land for the purposes of the Academy or any correspondence that affects the extent of the Land.

Restrictions on Land transfer

4.A The Academy Trust must:

- a) within 28 days of the signing of this Agreement in circumstances where the Land is transferred to the Academy Trust prior to the date of this Agreement, or otherwise within 28 days of the transfer of the Land to the Academy Trust, apply to the Land Registry using Form RX1 for the following restriction (the **"Restriction"**) to be entered in the proprietorship register for the Land:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate, or by the proprietor of any registered charge, not being a charge registered before the entry of this restriction, is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT;

- b) take any further steps reasonably required to ensure that the Restriction is entered on the proprietorship register;
- c) promptly confirm to the Secretary of State when the Restriction has been registered;
- d) if it has not registered the Restriction, permit the Secretary of State to do so in its place; and
- e) not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify, cancel or remove the Restriction, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust.

Obligations of the Academy Trust

- 4.B The Academy Trust must keep the Land clean and tidy and make good any damage or deterioration to the Land. The Academy Trust must not do anything to lessen the value or marketability of the Land without the Secretary of State's consent.
- 4.C The Academy Trust must comply with the Lease and promptly enforce its rights against the Landlord.
- 4.D The Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:
 - a) terminate, vary, surrender, renew, dispose of or agree any revised rent under the Lease;
 - b) grant any consent or licence; or
 - c) create or allow any encumbrance; or
 - d) part with or share possession or occupation; or

- e) enter into any onerous or restrictive obligations,

in respect of all or part of the Land provided that the Academy Trust may grant a licence or share occupation of part of the Land with a proprietor or proposed proprietor of an academy or a body or individual providing services or facilities which are within the uses permitted by the Lease and where no relationship of landlord and tenant arises as a result of such occupation.

Option

4.E The Academy Trust grants and the Secretary of State accepts an option (the “**Option**”) to acquire the Land at nil consideration. The Secretary of State may exercise the Option in writing:

- a) if this Agreement is terminated for any reason;
- b) at any time on or after the issue of a Termination Notice; or
- c) if, under clause 4.K, the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State agree that part of the Land should be demised or subleased to another academy trust;
- d) if, under clause 4.M, the Academy Trust cannot use all or part of the Land as the permanent site of the Academy.

4.E.1 If the Option is exercised, completion will take place

- a) 28 days after the exercise date where a Termination Notice has not been issued; or
- b) where a Termination Notice has been issued, the date specified in the Termination Notice as to when this Agreement shall terminate

and in either case in accordance with the Law Society’s Standard Conditions of Sale for Commercial Property in force at that date.

Option notice

4.F The Academy Trust:

- a) must, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to the Land Registry on Form AN1 (including a copy of this Agreement) for a notice of the Option (the “**Option Notice**”) to be entered in the register, taking any further steps required to have the Option Notice registered and promptly confirming to the Secretary of State when this has been done;

- b) if it has not registered the Option Notice, agrees that the Secretary of State may apply to register it using Form UN1;
- c) must not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify or remove the Option Notice, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust, and
- d) must, in the case of previously unregistered land, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to register a Class C(iv) land charge in the Land Charges Registry, and send the Secretary of State a copy of the relevant entry within 7 days after the registration has been completed. If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not complied with this clause, he may apply to secure the registration.

Property notices

4.G If the Academy Trust receives a Property Notice, it must:

- a) send a copy of it to the Secretary of State within 14 days, stating how the Academy Trust intends to respond to it;
- b) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about it;
- c) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to comply with it, and
- d) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State in connection with it.

Breach of Lease

4.H If the Academy Trust is, or if it is reasonably foreseeable that it will be, in material breach of the Lease, the Academy Trust must immediately give written notice to the Secretary of State stating what the breach is and what action the Academy Trust has taken or proposes to take to remedy it, including timescales where appropriate.

4.I After notifying the Secretary of State under clause 4.H, the Academy Trust must:

- a) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about the breach;
- b) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to remedy or prevent the breach, and
- c) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State to remedy or prevent the breach.

Sharing the Land

4.J Where:

- a) the Secretary of State identifies basic or parental need for additional places in the area in which the Academy is situated; and
- b) the Secretary of State then considers that not all the Land is needed for the operation of the Academy at planned capacity,

the Secretary of State must consult with the Academy Trust to determine whether part of the Land could be demised or sublet or otherwise made available to another academy trust, as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, for the purpose of that academy trust establishing and maintaining an educational institution on that part of the Land.

To the extent the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State agree to part of the Land being demised or sublet or otherwise made available in accordance with clause 4.J, and provided that:

- (i) the part of the Land being demised or sublet or otherwise made available is, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, surplus to the Academy's needs to fulfil its obligations under this Agreement; and
- (ii) the alienation of the relevant part of the Land would not be detrimental to the operation of the Academy by the Academy Trust,

the Academy Trust must use its reasonable endeavours to procure all necessary consents including either the approval of the Landlord or any

necessary amendments to the Lease in order to enable it to be demise, sublet or otherwise make available the relevant part of the Land to the incoming academy trust, and shall enter into any legal arrangements which the Secretary of State requires for this purpose, subject to all restrictions governing the Academy Trust's ownership, occupation and use of the Land and the Academy Trust's obligations under charity law. The Secretary of State shall meet the necessary and reasonable legal costs incurred by the Academy Trust in connection with this clause.

4.K For the purposes of clause 4.J:

- a) a **basic need** will arise when the forecast demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated is greater than the existing capacity to provide them;
- b) a **parental need** will arise when the Department for Education is actually aware of an additional demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated, following representations from parents in that area; and
- c) **planned capacity** has the meaning given in clause 2.B.

4.L If the Academy Trust cannot use all or part of the Land as the permanent site of the Academy but the Secretary of State agrees not to terminate this Agreement on that basis, the Secretary of State may notify the Academy Trust that he intends to exercise the Option to transfer the Land for nil consideration to himself or his nominee.

4.M On or following the issue of a Termination Notice, the Secretary of State may give notice that he intends to exercise his rights under clause 4.E. Any such notice is without prejudice to his right to exercise any other rights available to him.

Church supplemental agreement:-

The parties rights and obligations in respect of the Land are set out in the Church Supplemental Agreement dated 31 August 2018 and made between (1) the Secretary of State; (2) the Academy Trust; (3) The Worcester Diocesan Board of

Finance Limited; and (4) The Board of Education of the Diocese of Worcester. For the purposes of this clause, the Land has the meaning given in the Church Supplemental Agreement.

5. TERMINATION

Termination by either party

5.A Either party may give at least seven Academy Financial Years' notice to terminate this Agreement. Such termination would take effect on 31 August of the relevant year.

Termination Warning Notice

5.B The Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice where he considers that:

- a) the Academy Trust has breached the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement; or
- b) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low; or
- c) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed; or
- d) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened, including due to breakdown of discipline; or
- e) the Academy is Coasting provided he has notified the Academy Trust that it is Coasting.

5.C A Termination Warning Notice served under clause 5.B will specify:

- a) the action the Academy Trust must take;
- b) the date by which the action must be completed; and
- c) the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations,

or confirm that it agrees to undertake the specified action.

- 5.D The Secretary of State will consider any representations from the Academy Trust which he receives by the date specified in the Termination Warning Notice. The Secretary of State may amend the Termination Warning Notice to specify further action which the Academy Trust must take, and the date by which it must be completed.
- 5.E If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not responded to the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clause 5.C(c), or has not completed the action required in the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clauses 5.C(a) and (b) (and any further action specified under clause 5.D) he may serve a Termination Notice.

Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection

- 5.F If the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Academy Trust that:
- a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy;
or
 - b) the Academy requires significant improvement

the Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice, specifying the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations.

- 5.G In deciding whether to give notice of his intention to terminate under clause 5.F, the Secretary of State will have due regard to the overall performance of the Academy Trust.

5.G.1 Not used

- 5.H If the Secretary of State has served a Termination Warning Notice under clause 5.F and:
- a) has not received any representations from the Academy Trust by the date specified in the notice; or
 - b) having considered the representations made by the Academy Trust

remains satisfied that this Agreement should be terminated;

he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.I Not used

Termination by the Secretary of State

5.J If the Secretary of State has determined that the Academy will be removed from the Register of Independent Schools and no appeal against that determination is pending, he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.K Not used

5.L Not used

5.M Not used

5.N Not used

5.O Not used

Funding and admission during notice period

5.P If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Notice under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy, and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

5.Q If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Warning Notice or a Termination Notice otherwise than under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy (unless the Secretary of State specifies otherwise), and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust

5.R The Secretary of State will, before the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide the Academy Trust with a final funding allocation indicating the level of GAG and EAG to be provided in the next Academy Financial Year (the

“Funding Allocation”).

- 5.S If the Academy Trust is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Funding Allocation for the next Academy Financial Year (the “**Critical Year**”) and after taking into account all other resources likely to be available to the Academy, including other funds that are likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Academy Trust (“**All Other Resources**”), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Academy Trust may give written notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement on 31 August before the Critical Year.
- 5.T Any notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must be provided to the Secretary of State within six weeks of the Secretary of State issuing the Funding Allocation. The notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must specify:
- a) the grounds upon which the Academy Trust’s opinion is based, including:
 - i. evidence of those grounds;
 - ii. any professional accounting advice the Academy Trust has received;
 - iii. a detailed statement of steps which the Academy Trust proposes to take to ensure that the running costs of the Academy are reduced such that costs are less than the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources, and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and
 - b) the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Academy Trust to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and
 - c) a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the “**Projected Budget**”).

- 5.U Both parties will use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.
- 5.V If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or another date if agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, then that question will be referred to an independent expert (the “**Expert**”) for resolution. The Expert’s determination will be final and binding on both parties. The Expert will be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the “**Shortfall**”).
- 5.W The Expert will be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert will be appointed by the President of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert’s fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.X The Expert will be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist will be appointed by the Chairman of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust (or any successor or equivalent body). The educational specialist’s fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.Y If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State will not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Academy Trust will be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August before the Critical Year. Any such notice will be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert’s determination

will have been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State will have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

Effect of termination

- 5.Z If this Agreement is terminated, the Academy will cease to be an Academy within the meaning of sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.
- 5.AA Subject to clauses 5.BB and 5.CC, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement under clause 5.A, he will indemnify the Academy Trust. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than under clause 5.A, he may at his discretion indemnify or compensate the Academy Trust.
- 5.BB The amount of any such indemnity or compensation will be determined by the Secretary of State, having regard to representations made to him by the Academy Trust, and will be paid as and when the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- 5.CC The categories of expenditure incurred by the Academy Trust in consequence of termination, for which the Secretary of State may indemnify the Academy Trust under clauses 5.AA, may include:
- a) staff compensation and redundancy payments;
 - b) compensation payments in respect of broken contracts;
 - c) expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes;
 - d) legal and other professional fees; and
 - e) dissolution expenses.
- 5.DD If this Agreement is terminated, and the Academy Trust owns capital assets which have been partly or wholly funded by HM Government, the Academy Trust must, as soon as possible after the termination date:
- a) transfer a proportion of those capital assets, equal to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government, to a

nominee of the Secretary of State to use for educational purposes; or

- b) if the Secretary of State directs that a transfer under clause 5.DD(a) is not required, pay to the Secretary of State at the termination date (or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of their subsequent disposal) a sum equivalent to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government.

5.EE The Secretary of State may:

- a) waive all or part of the repayment due under sub-clause 5.DD(b) if the Academy Trust obtains his permission to invest the sale proceeds for its charitable purposes; or
- b) direct the Academy Trust to pay all or part of the sale proceeds to the relevant LA.

6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS

Annexes

6.A Any annexes to this Agreement form part of and are incorporated into this Agreement.

The Master Agreement

6.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, all provisions of the Master Agreement have full force and effect.

General

6.C The Academy Trust cannot assign this Agreement.

6.D Failure to exercise, or a delay in exercising, any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement (including the right to terminate this Agreement), or a single or partial exercise of such a right or remedy, is not a waiver of, and does not prevent or restrict any initial or further exercise of, that or any other right or remedy.

- 6.E Termination of this Agreement will not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.
- 6.F This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all of which will together constitute the same agreement.
- 6.G This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales, and submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.
- 6.H The Secretary of State agrees that this Agreement shall be interpreted in a way which is compatible with the provisions of clauses 20-20F and 23A-G (if used) of the Church Supplemental Agreement dated 31 August 2018 and made between (1) the Secretary of State; (2) the Academy Trust; (3) The Worcester Diocesan Board of Finance Limited; and (4) The Board of Education of the Diocese of Worcester.

Information Sharing with Local Authorities – Statutory Responsibilities

- 6.I The Academy Trust must provide:
- a) the name, address and date of birth of the pupil or student;
 - b) the name and address of a parent of the pupil or student;
 - c) information in the institution's possession about the pupil or student (except if the pupil or student concerned (in the case of a pupil or student who has attained the age of 16) or a parent of the pupil or student concerned (in the case of a pupil or student who has not attained the age of 16) has instructed the Academy Trust not to provide information of that kind);
- upon request under section 14 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 from a local authority (for the purpose of enabling or assisting it to exercise its functions under Part 1 of that Act); or

upon request under section 72 of that Act from a body providing services under sections 68 or 70(1)(b) of the Act (for the purposes of providing such services).

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on
Executed on behalf of the **Academy Trust** by:

.....

Director

in the
presence of

.....

Witness

Name:

Address:

The Corporate Seal of

THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION

affixed to this deed is authenticated by:

.....

Duly Authorised

ANNEXES

Annex A

ADMISSION OF CHILDREN AND YOUNG PEOPLE WITH EDUCATION, HEALTH AND CARE PLANS

“**EHC Plan**” means an education, health and care plan made under section 37 of the Children and Families Act 2014.

The Children and Families Act 2014 imposes duties directly on Academies in respect of pupils with SEN, including the admission of pupils with EHC plans. If an Academy Trust considers that a LA should not have named the Academy in an EHC plan, it may ask the Secretary of State to determine whether the LA has acted unreasonably, and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider. The Academy Trust must admit the pupil if such a determination is pending. The Secretary of State’s determination as to whether the LA acted unreasonably will be final, subject to any right of appeal which a pupil (who is over compulsory school age) or parent of the pupil may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) or the Upper Tribunal Administrative Appeals Chamber.



Department
for Education

© Crown copyright 2020

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

Visit: www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2

email: psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

We welcome feedback. If you would like to make any comments about this publication, please email AFSPD.feedback@education.gov.uk, quoting the title of this document. Specific project queries should be sent to the allocated project lead/lead contact.

About this publication:

enquiries www.education.gov.uk/contactus

download www.gov.uk/government/publications

Reference: DfE-00214-2020



Follow us on Twitter:
[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:
facebook.com/educationgovuk

Schedule 6

Amended Bretforton Village School SFA



Department
for Education

Mainstream academy and free school: supplemental funding agreement Bretforton Village School

December 2020 v7

Contents

Information about the Academy:	4
1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY	8
Definitions and interpretation	8
The Academy	9
2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY	10
Teachers and staff	10
Pupils	10
SEN Unit or Resourced Provision	11
Charging	11
Admissions	11
3. GRANT FUNDING	15
Calculation of GAG	15
Other relevant funding	16
4. LAND	17
5. TERMINATION	22
Termination by either party	22
Termination Warning Notice	22
Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection	24
Termination by the Secretary of State	25
Funding and admission during notice period	25
Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust	25
Effect of termination	28
6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS	29

Annexes	29
The Master Agreement	29
General	29
Information Sharing with Local Authorities – Statutory Responsibilities	30
ANNEXES	32
ADMISSION OF CHILDREN AND YOUNG PEOPLE WITH EDUCATION, HEALTH AND CARE PLANS	32

SUMMARY SHEET

Information about the Academy:

Name of Academy Trust	Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust
Company number	08943457
Date of Master Funding Agreement	
Name of Academy	Bretforton Village School
Opening date	1 February 2018
Type of academy (indicate whether academy or free school)	Mainstream Academy
Religious designation	Not applicable
Wholly or partly selective	Not applicable
Name of predecessor school (where applicable)	Bretforton First School
Capacity number (of statutory school age places) (if the Academy has a nursery provision, please provide a breakdown of capacity for nursery pupils and statutory school age places)	90
Age range (including nursery provision where the nursery is part of the school)	4 to 10 years
Number of sixth form places	Not applicable
Number of boarding places	Not applicable
SEN unit / Resource provision	Not applicable
Land arrangements (Version 1-8 or other)	Version 2
Academy and title number of Land (and Temporary Site)	Bretforton First School, New Street, Bretforton, Evesham, Worcestershire VVR11 7JS (Freehold Title Number WR99205, Leasehold Title Number WR176863)

Please confirm which clause variations have been applied or marked as 'Not used'

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
1.I	Only applies to free schools and new provision academies		X
2.A.1	Clause applies where an academy was previously a VC or foundation school designated with a religious character		X
2.C, 2.D	Only applies where the Academy has an SEN unit or Resourced Provision		X
2.E	Only applies where there was a predecessor independent school		X
2.E.1	Only applies to free Schools with nursery provision		X
2.G	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
2.M	Clause applies only to academies and free schools designated with a religious character		X
2.N	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly wholly selective grammar schools		X
2.O	Clause applies only to academies that were formerly partially selective grammar schools		X
2. P.1	Clause only applies to free schools or academy converter schools where there was a predecessor maintained school	X	
2.T	Clause applies to free schools and new provision academies designated with a religious character		X
2.W	Clause only applies where the Academy is designated with a religious character but was not previously a VC school or foundation school designated with a		X

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
	religious character (in which case use clause 2.Y instead). Also use 2.W where an academy was previously a VC school but has gone through a significant change process to adopt VA characteristics in parallel with converting to an academy		
2.X	Clause only applies where the Academy has not been designated with a religious character	X	
2.Y	Clause only applies where an academy was previously a VC school or foundation school designated with a religious character and should be used instead of clause 2.W. Where an academy was previously a VC school but has gone through a significant change process to adopt VA characteristics in parallel with converting to an academy, use clause 2.W instead.		X
2.Yc)	Sub-clause applies if the Academy is designated with a denominational religious character – CE etc. rather than ‘Christian’		X
3.A – 3.F	Option 1 applies to converter and sponsored academies: if used delete option 2	X	
3.A – 3.F	Option 2 applies to free schools and new provision academies: if used delete option 1		X
3.H	Clause relating to Start-up only applies in some cases (does not apply to academy converters)		X
3.I.1	Only applies to Free schools with nursery provision		X
3.J	Clause only applies to full sponsored and intermediate sponsored academies with approved Academy Action Plans	X	
3.K	Clause does not apply to free schools (unless there was a predecessor independent school), or new provision academies	X	
5.G.1	Clause applies only to a boarding		X

Clause No.	Descriptor	Applied	Not used
	academy/free school.		
5.I	Clause only applies to sponsored academies	X	
5.K	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.L	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.M	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.N	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
5.O	Clause applies to free schools and may be applied to new provision academies		X
6.H	Clause only applies to schools which are designated with a Church of England or Roman Catholic character		X

Please identify any other variations from the model that apply to this Academy (e.g. clauses relating to PFI, or any required because the multi academy trust includes academies designated with different religious characters, or a mixture of those designated with a religious character, and those which are not):

Additional clauses will be supplied by your project lead if needed.

Descriptor	Clause No.	Applied	Not used
Mixed MAT Governance	1.J	X	

1. ESTABLISHING THE ACADEMY

1.A This Agreement made between the Secretary of State for Education and Bengeworth Multi-Academy Trust is supplemental to the master funding agreement made between the same parties and dated (the “**Master Agreement**”).

Definitions and interpretation

1.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement words and expressions defined in the Master Agreement will have those same meanings in this Agreement.

1.C The following capitalised words and expressions will have the following meanings:

“The **Academy**” means Bretforton Village School.

“**Coasting**” has the meaning given by regulations under subsection (3) of section 60B of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 in relation to a school to which that section applies.

“**Guidance**” means guidance issued by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, as amended from time to time.

“**SEN**” means special educational needs and has the meaning set out in sections 20(1) and 21(2) of the Children and Families Act 2014.

“**Termination Notice**” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, terminating this Agreement on the date specified in the notice.

“**Termination Warning Notice**” means a notice sent by the Secretary of State to the Academy Trust, stating his intention to terminate this Agreement.

1.D The Interpretation Act 1978 applies to this Agreement as it applies to an Act of Parliament.

1.E Reference in this Agreement to clauses and annexes will, unless otherwise stated, be to clauses and annexes to this Agreement.

The Academy

1.F The Academy is a Mainstream Academy as defined in clause 1.4 of the Master Agreement.

1.G The Academy Trust will establish and maintain the Academy in accordance with the Master Agreement and this Agreement.

1.H The Academy Trust opened the Academy on 1 February 2018.

1.I Not used

Governance

1.J The Academy Trust shall establish for the Academy a Local Governing Body to which it may delegate its powers and functions in relation to the operation of the Academy. The role of the Local Governing Body and the membership of it shall be for the Academy Trust to decide, but the Academy Trust will, as a minimum, ensure that:

a) the members of the Local Governing Body shall recognise and support the individual ethos of the Academy as a school not designated as having a religious character and shall maintain the Academy's relationship with the local community within which it is situated and which it serves;

b) a minimum of two parents of a pupil at the Academy (to be elected by the parents of registered pupils of the Academy) shall be a member of the Local Governing Body.

2. RUNNING OF THE ACADEMY

Teachers and staff

2.A Subject to clause 2.A.2 and Annex A of this Agreement and section 67 of the Children and Families Act 2014, the Academy Trust may, in accordance with any relevant Guidance, employ anyone it believes is suitably qualified or is otherwise eligible to plan and prepare lessons and courses for pupils, teach pupils, and assess and report on pupils' development, progress and attainment.

2.A.1 Not used

2.A.2 The Academy Trust must designate a staff member at the Academy as responsible for promoting the educational achievement of registered pupils at the Academy who are being looked after by a la, or are no longer looked after by a la because of an adoption, special guardianship or child arrangements order, or because they have been adopted from 'state care' outside England and Wales, and in doing so must comply with the law, regulations and Guidance that apply to maintained schools. The Academy Trust must ensure the designated person undertakes appropriate training and has regard to any Guidance.

Pupils

2.B The planned capacity of the Academy is 90 and the age range is 4 - 10. For the avoidance of doubt, notwithstanding that an individual applicant's age might be outside the specified age range of the Academy, the Academy is not prevented from considering an application made by the child's Parent(s) in order to comply with the relevant paragraph of the Schools Admissions Code ('Admission of children outside their normal age group'), to request that the child be admitted to the school outside of the child's normal age group. Where such a request is agreed, the child should be educated in an existing year group. The Academy will be an all ability inclusive mixed sex school.

SEN Unit or Resourced Provision

2.C Not used

2.D Not used

Charging

2.E Not Used

2.E.1 Not used

Admissions

2.F Subject to clauses 2.L and 2.M the Academy Trust will act in accordance with, and will ensure that its Independent Appeal Panel is trained to act in accordance with, the School Admissions Code and School Admission Appeals Code published by the Department for Education (the “Codes”) and all relevant admissions law as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools, and with equalities law. Reference in the Codes or legislation to “admission authorities” will be deemed to be references to the Academy Trust.

2.G Pupils on roll in a Predecessor School which was a maintained or independent school will transfer automatically to the Academy on opening. All children already offered a place at that Predecessor School must be admitted to the Academy.

2.H The Academy Trust must participate in the local Fair Access Protocol. The Academy Trust must participate in the coordinated admission arrangements operated by the LA in whose area the Academy is situated. If the Academy is a free school, the Academy Trust is not required to participate in coordination for its first intake of pupils.

2.I Not used

2.J Not used

2.K Not used

2.L The Secretary of State may:

- a) direct the Academy Trust to admit a named pupil to the Academy:
 - i. following an application from a LA including complying with a school attendance order as defined in section 437 of the Education Act 1996. Before doing so the Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust; or
 - ii. where in relation to a specific child or children the Academy Trust has failed to act in accordance with the Codes or this Agreement or has otherwise acted unlawfully; or
- b) direct the Academy Trust to amend its admission arrangements where they do not comply with the Codes or this Agreement, or are otherwise unlawful.

2.M Not used

2.N Not used

2.O Not used

2.P The Academy Trust must make arrangements to ensure an independent appeals panel is established for the Academy and its clerk and members are trained to act in accordance with the Codes. The Academy Trust must ensure that parents and 'relevant children' (as described in the Codes) are informed of their right to appeal to an Independent Appeal Panel if they are dissatisfied with an admission decision of the Academy Trust. The arrangements for appeals must comply with the Codes as they apply to foundation and voluntary aided schools. The determination of the Independent Appeal Panel is binding on all parties.

2.P.1 The Academy Trust will treat any decision of an Independent Appeal Panel constituted further to arrangements made by the admission authority of a Predecessor School under section 94 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as binding on the Academy Trust, as though the

Academy Trust had made the decision subject to the appeal.

- 2.Q Subject to clause 2.R, the meaning of “**relevant area**” for the purposes of consultation requirements in relation to admission arrangements is that determined by the relevant LA for maintained schools in the area in accordance with the Education (Relevant Areas for Consultation on Admission Arrangements) Regulations 1999.
- 2.R If the Academy does not consider the relevant area determined by the LA for the maintained schools in the area to be appropriate, it must apply to the Secretary of State by 1 August before the academic year in question for a determination of the appropriate relevant area for the Academy, setting out the reasons for this view. The Secretary of State will consult the Academy Trust and the LA in whose area the Academy is situated in reaching a decision.
- 2.S The Office of the Schools Adjudicator (“OSA”) will consider objections to the Academy’s admission arrangements (except objections against any agreed derogations from the provisions of the Codes specified in this Agreement, over which it has no jurisdiction). The Academy Trust must therefore make it clear, when determining the Academy’s admission arrangements, that objections should be submitted to the OSA. The OSA’s determination of an objection is binding on the Academy and the Academy Trust must make appropriate changes to its admission arrangements to give effect to the Adjudicator’s decision within two months of the decision (or by 28 February following the decision, whichever is sooner), unless an alternative timescale is specified by the Adjudicator.
- 2.T Not used

Curriculum

- 2.U The Academy Trust must provide for the teaching of religious education and a daily act of collective worship at the Academy.
- 2.V The Academy Trust must comply with section 71(1)-(6) and (8) of the School

Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if the Academy were a community, foundation or voluntary school, and as if references to “religious education” and “religious worship” in that section were references to the religious education and religious worship provided by the Academy in accordance with clause 2.X.

2.W Not used

2.X Subject to clause 2.V, **where the Academy has not been designated with a religious character** (in accordance with section 124B of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or further to section 6(8) of the Academies Act 2010):

- a) provision must be made for religious education to be given to all pupils at the Academy in accordance with the requirements for agreed syllabuses in section 375(3) of the Education Act 1996 and paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;
- b) the Academy must comply with section 70(1) of, and Schedule 20 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as if it were a community school or foundation school without a religious character, except that paragraph 4 of that Schedule does not apply. The Academy may apply to the Secretary of State for consent to be relieved of the requirement imposed by paragraph 3(2) of that Schedule.

2.Y Not used

2.Z The Academy Trust must comply with paragraph 2A of the Schedule to The Education (Independent School Standards) Regulations 2014 in relation to the provision of Relationships Education, Relationships and Sex Education and Health Education.

2.AA The Academy Trust must prevent political indoctrination, and secure the balanced treatment of political issues, in line with the requirements for maintained schools set out in the Education Act 1996, and have regard to any Guidance.

3. GRANT FUNDING

Calculation of GAG

3A-3D. Not used.

3.E The Secretary of State will calculate GAG based on the pupil count at the Academy. In order to calculate GAG for the Academy Financial Year in which the Academy opens, the pupil count will be determined on the same basis as that used by the relevant LA for determining the budget of the maintained Predecessor School.

3.F For Academy Financial Years after that referred to in clause 3.E, the basis of the pupil count for determining GAG will be:

- a) for pupils in Year 11 and below, the Schools Census which is used to fund maintained schools for the financial year overlapping with the Academy Financial Year in question; and
- b) for pupils in Year 12 and above, the formula which is in use at the time for maintained schools.

3.G The Secretary of State may, at his discretion, adjust the basis of the pupil count to take account of any diseconomies of scale which may affect the Academy if it is operating below the planned capacity in clause 2.B. If such an adjustment is made in any Academy Financial Year, this will not change the basis of the pupil count for calculating the following Academy Financial Year's GAG. If the Secretary of State has indicated that additional grant may be payable in such circumstances, the Academy Trust will bid for this additional grant based on need and providing appropriate supporting evidence. The Secretary of State may accept or refuse the bid at his discretion.

3.H Not used

3.I The Secretary of State recognises that if a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice is served, or the Master Agreement is otherwise terminated, the intake of new pupils during the notice period may decline and

therefore payments based on the number of pupils attending the Academy may be insufficient to meet the Academy's needs. In these circumstances the Secretary of State may pay a larger GAG in the notice period, to enable the Academy to operate effectively.

3.I.1. Not used

Other relevant funding

- 3.J The Academy Trust may apply to the Secretary of State for financial assistance in relation to proposed redundancies at the Academy. In response to such an application, the Secretary of State may at his discretion agree to meet a proportion of the Academy Trust's costs arising from the inclusion of academies in the schedules to the Redundancy Payments (Continuity of Employment in Local Government) (Modification) Order 1999. The Secretary of State may agree to meet the costs of an employee's prior eligible service, being service before the Academy opened, but the Academy Trust must meet the costs of service after the Academy opened. The Secretary of State's financial assistance in this respect will only be available in the first two years after the Academy opens.
- 3.K The Secretary of State may pay the Academy Trust's costs in connection with the transfer of employees from a Predecessor School under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Such payment will be agreed on a case-by-case basis. The Academy Trust must not budget for such a payment unless the Secretary of State confirms in writing that it will be paid.

Carrying forward of funds

3.L Any additional grant made in accordance with clause 3.I, for a period after the Secretary of State has served a Termination Notice or a Termination Warning Notice under this Agreement, or otherwise terminates the Master Agreement, may be carried forward without limitation or deduction until the circumstances set out in clause 3.I cease to apply or the Academy closes.

4. LAND

“**Land**” means the land at Bretforton First School, New Street, Bretforton, Evesham, Worcestershire VVR11 7JS, being the land registered with title number WR99205 and demised by the Lease.

“**Lease**” means the lease, any subsequent variations to the lease or other occupational agreement between the Academy Trust and a third party (the “**Landlord**”) under which the Academy Trust derives title to the Land.

“**Property Notice**” means any order, notice, proposal, demand or other requirement issued by any competent authority (including the Landlord) which materially affects the Academy Trust’s ability to use the Land for the purposes of the Academy or any correspondence that affects the extent of the Land.

Restrictions on Land transfer

4.A The Academy Trust must:

- a) within 28 days of the signing of this Agreement in circumstances where the Land is transferred to the Academy Trust prior to the date of this Agreement, or otherwise within 28 days of the transfer of the Land to the Academy Trust, apply to the Land Registry using Form RX1 for the following restriction (the “**Restriction**”) to be entered in the proprietorship register for the Land:

No disposition of the registered estate by the proprietor of the registered estate, or by the proprietor of any registered charge, not being a charge registered before the entry of this restriction, is to be registered without a written consent signed by the Secretary of State for Education, of Sanctuary Buildings, Great Smith Street, London SW1P 3BT;

- b) take any further steps reasonably required to ensure that the Restriction is entered on the proprietorship register;
- c) promptly confirm to the Secretary of State when the Restriction has been registered;
- d) if it has not registered the Restriction, permit the Secretary of State to do so in its place; and
- e) not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify, cancel or remove the Restriction, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust.

Obligations of the Academy Trust

- 4.B The Academy Trust must keep the Land clean and tidy and make good any damage or deterioration to the Land. The Academy Trust must not do anything to lessen the value or marketability of the Land without the Secretary of State's consent.
- 4.C The Academy Trust must comply with the Lease and promptly enforce its rights against the Landlord.
- 4.D The Academy Trust must not, without the Secretary of State's consent:
 - a) terminate, vary, surrender, renew, dispose of or agree any revised rent under the Lease;
 - b) grant any consent or licence; or
 - c) create or allow any encumbrance; or
 - d) part with or share possession or occupation; or
 - e) enter into any onerous or restrictive obligations,

in respect of all or part of the Land provided that the Academy Trust may grant a licence or share occupation of part of the Land with a proprietor or proposed proprietor of an academy or a body or individual providing services or facilities which are within the uses permitted by the Lease and where no relationship of

landlord and tenant arises as a result of such occupation.

Option

4.E The Academy Trust grants and the Secretary of State accepts an option (the “**Option**”) to acquire the Land at nil consideration. The Secretary of State may exercise the Option in writing:

- a) if this Agreement is terminated for any reason;
- b) at any time on or after the issue of a Termination Notice; or
- c) if, under clause 4.K, the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State agree that part of the Land should be demised or subleased to another academy trust;
- d) if, under clause 4.M, the Academy Trust cannot use all or part of the Land as the permanent site of the Academy.

4.E.1 If the Option is exercised, completion will take place

- a) 28 days after the exercise date where a Termination Notice has not been issued; or
- b) where a Termination Notice has been issued, the date specified in the Termination Notice as to when this Agreement shall terminate

and in either case in accordance with the Law Society’s Standard Conditions of Sale for Commercial Property in force at that date.

Option notice

4.F The Academy Trust:

- a) must, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to the Land Registry on Form AN1 (including a copy of this Agreement) for a notice of the Option (the “**Option Notice**”) to be entered in the register, taking any further steps required to have the Option Notice registered and promptly confirming to the Secretary of State when this has been done;
- b) if it has not registered the Option Notice, agrees that the Secretary of State may apply to register it using Form UN1;

- c) must not, without the Secretary of State's consent, apply to disapply, modify or remove the Option Notice, whether by itself, a holding company, a subsidiary company, or a receiver, administrator or liquidator acting in the name of the Academy Trust, and
- d) must, in the case of previously unregistered land, within 14 days after acquiring the Land or, if later, after signing this Agreement, apply to register a Class C(iv) land charge in the Land Charges Registry, and send the Secretary of State a copy of the relevant entry within 7 days after the registration has been completed. If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not complied with this clause, he may apply to secure the registration.

Property notices

4.G If the Academy Trust receives a Property Notice, it must:

- a) send a copy of it to the Secretary of State within 14 days, stating how the Academy Trust intends to respond to it;
- b) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about it;
- c) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to comply with it, and
- d) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State in connection with it.

Breach of Lease

4.H If the Academy Trust is, or if it is reasonably foreseeable that it will be, in material breach of the Lease, the Academy Trust must immediately give written notice to the Secretary of State stating what the breach is and what action the Academy Trust has taken or proposes to take to remedy it, including timescales where appropriate.

4.I After notifying the Secretary of State under clause 4.H, the Academy Trust must:

- a) promptly give the Secretary of State all the information he asks for about the breach;
- b) allow the Secretary of State to take all necessary action, with or instead of the Academy Trust, to remedy or prevent the breach, and
- c) use its best endeavours to help the Secretary of State to remedy or prevent the breach.

Sharing the Land

4.J Where:

- a) the Secretary of State identifies basic or parental need for additional places in the area in which the Academy is situated; and
- b) the Secretary of State then considers that not all the Land is needed for the operation of the Academy at planned capacity,

the Secretary of State must consult with the Academy Trust to determine whether part of the Land could be demised or sublet to another academy trust, as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, for the purpose of that academy trust establishing and maintaining an educational institution on the Land.

4.K To the extent the Academy Trust and the Secretary of State agree to part of the Land being demised or sublet in accordance with clause 4.J, the Academy Trust must use its best endeavours to procure either the approval of the Landlord or any necessary amendments to the Lease in order to enable it to share occupation of the Land with the incoming academy trust and to provide the incoming academy trust with security of occupancy over the Land occupied by it, and shall enter into any legal arrangements which the Secretary of State requires for this purpose. The Secretary of State shall meet the necessary and reasonable legal costs incurred by the Academy Trust in connection with entering into any such arrangements under this clause.

4.L For the purposes of clause 4.J:

- a) a **basic need** will arise when the forecast demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated is greater than the existing capacity to provide them;
- b) a **parental need** will arise when the Department for Education is actually aware of an additional demand for pupil places in the area where the Academy is situated, following representations from parents in that area; and
- c) **planned capacity** has the meaning given in clause 2.B.

4.M If the Academy Trust cannot use all or part of the Land as the permanent site of the Academy but the Secretary of State agrees not to terminate this Agreement on that basis, the Secretary of State may notify the Academy Trust that he intends to exercise the Option to transfer the Land for nil consideration to himself or his nominee.

4.N On or following the issue of a Termination Notice, the Secretary of State may give notice that he intends to exercise his rights under clause 4.E. Any such notice is without prejudice to his right to exercise any other rights available to him.

5. TERMINATION

Termination by either party

5.A Either party may give at least seven Academy Financial Years' notice to terminate this Agreement. Such termination would take effect on 31 August of the relevant year.

Termination Warning Notice

5.B The Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice where he considers that:

- a) the Academy Trust has breached the provisions of this Agreement or the Master Agreement; or

- b) the standards of performance of pupils at the Academy are unacceptably low; or
- c) there has been a serious breakdown in the way the Academy is managed or governed; or
- d) the safety of pupils or staff is threatened, including due to breakdown of discipline; or
- e) the Academy is Coasting provided he has notified the Academy Trust that it is Coasting.

5.C A Termination Warning Notice served under clause 5.B will specify:

- a) the action the Academy Trust must take;
- b) the date by which the action must be completed; and
- c) the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations, or confirm that it agrees to undertake the specified action.

5.D The Secretary of State will consider any representations from the Academy Trust which he receives by the date specified in the Termination Warning Notice. The Secretary of State may amend the Termination Warning Notice to specify further action which the Academy Trust must take, and the date by which it must be completed.

5.E If the Secretary of State considers that the Academy Trust has not responded to the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clause 5.C(c), or has not completed the action required in the Termination Warning Notice as specified under clauses 5.C(a) and (b) (and any further action specified under clause 5.D) he may serve a Termination Notice.

Termination by the Secretary of State after inspection

5.F If the Chief Inspector gives notice to the Academy Trust that:

- a) special measures are required to be taken in relation to the Academy;
or
- b) the Academy requires significant improvement

the Secretary of State may serve a Termination Warning Notice, specifying the date by which the Academy Trust must make any representations.

5.G In deciding whether to give notice of his intention to terminate under clause 5.F, the Secretary of State will have due regard to the overall performance of the Academy Trust.

5.G.1 Not used

5.H If the Secretary of State has served a Termination Warning Notice under clause 5.F and:

- a) has not received any representations from the Academy Trust by the date specified in the notice; or
- b) having considered the representations made by the Academy Trust remains satisfied that this Agreement should be terminated;

he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.I If the Chief Inspector gives a notice referred to in clause 5.F to the Academy Trust within two years after the Academy opened, the Secretary of State may only serve a Termination Warning Notice under clause 5.F if:

- a) the Chief Inspector has held a monitoring inspection under section 8 of the Education Act 2005 later than two years after the Academy opened; and
- b) the Chief Inspector considers that the Academy is not making enough progress towards the removal of the designation referred to in his

notice.

Nothing in this clause prevents or prejudices the Secretary of State exercising any other rights arising from or under this Agreement (including, for the avoidance of doubt, any rights under clauses 5.B to 5.E).

Termination by the Secretary of State

5.J If the Secretary of State has determined that the Academy will be removed from the Register of Independent Schools and no appeal against that determination is pending, he may serve a Termination Notice.

5.K Not used

5.L Not used

5.M Not used

5.N Not used

5.O Not used

Funding and admission during notice period

5.P If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Notice under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy, and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

5.Q If the Secretary of State serves a Termination Warning Notice or a Termination Notice otherwise than under clause 5.A, the Academy Trust may continue during the notice period to admit pupils to the Academy (unless the Secretary of State specifies otherwise), and to receive GAG and EAG, in accordance with this Agreement.

Notice of intention to terminate by Academy Trust

5.R The Secretary of State will, before the start of each Academy Financial Year, provide the Academy Trust with a final funding allocation indicating the level of GAG and EAG to be provided in the next Academy Financial Year (the

“Funding Allocation”).

- 5.S If the Academy Trust is of the opinion that, after receipt of the Funding Allocation for the next Academy Financial Year (the “**Critical Year**”) and after taking into account all other resources likely to be available to the Academy, including other funds that are likely to be available to the Academy from other academies operated by the Academy Trust (“**All Other Resources**”), it is likely that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent (and for this reason only) then the Academy Trust may give written notice of its intention to terminate this Agreement on 31 August before the Critical Year.
- 5.T Any notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must be provided to the Secretary of State within six weeks of the Secretary of State issuing the Funding Allocation. The notice given by the Academy Trust under clause 5.S must specify:
- a) the grounds upon which the Academy Trust’s opinion is based, including:
 - i. evidence of those grounds;
 - ii. any professional accounting advice the Academy Trust has received;
 - iii. a detailed statement of steps which the Academy Trust proposes to take to ensure that the running costs of the Academy are reduced such that costs are less than the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources, and the period of time within which such steps will be taken; and
 - b) the shortfall in the Critical Year between the Funding Allocation and All Other Resources expected to be available to the Academy Trust to run the Academy and the projected expenditure on the Academy; and
 - c) a detailed budget of income and expenditure for the Academy during the Critical Year (the “**Projected Budget**”).

- 5.U Both parties will use their best endeavours to agree whether or not the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent. Both parties recognise that they will need to engage in a constructive dialogue at the time about how best to provide education for the pupils at the Academy and use their best endeavours to agree a practical solution to the problem.
- 5.V If no agreement is reached by 30 April (or another date if agreed between the parties) as to whether the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, then that question will be referred to an independent expert (the “**Expert**”) for resolution. The Expert’s determination will be final and binding on both parties. The Expert will be requested to specify in his determination the amount of the shortfall in funding (the “**Shortfall**”).
- 5.W The Expert will be an insolvency practitioner with significant professional experience of educational institutions or academies. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the Expert then the Expert will be appointed by the President of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales. The Expert’s fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.X The Expert will be required in reaching his determination to take account of advice from an educational specialist who is professionally familiar with the issues arising from the budget management of schools. If the parties fail to agree upon the appointment of the educational specialist then the educational specialist will be appointed by the Chairman of the Specialist Schools and Academies Trust (or any successor or equivalent body). The educational specialist’s fees will be borne equally between the parties.
- 5.Y If the Expert determines that the cost of running the Academy during the Critical Year would cause the Academy Trust to become insolvent, and the Secretary of State will not have agreed to provide sufficient additional funding to cover the Shortfall, then the Academy Trust will be entitled to terminate this Agreement, by notice expiring on 31 August before the Critical Year. Any such notice will be given within 21 days after (a) the Expert’s determination

will have been given to the parties or (b), if later, the Secretary of State will have given written notice of his refusal to provide sufficient additional funding for the Academy to cover the Shortfall.

Effect of termination

- 5.Z If this Agreement is terminated, the Academy will cease to be an Academy within the meaning of sections 1 and 1A of the Academies Act 2010.
- 5.AA Subject to clauses 5.BB and 5.CC, if the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement under clause 5.A, he will indemnify the Academy Trust. If the Secretary of State terminates this Agreement otherwise than under clause 5.A, he may at his discretion indemnify or compensate the Academy Trust.
- 5.BB The amount of any such indemnity or compensation will be determined by the Secretary of State, having regard to representations made to him by the Academy Trust, and will be paid as and when the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- 5.CC The categories of expenditure incurred by the Academy Trust in consequence of termination, for which the Secretary of State may indemnify the Academy Trust under clauses 5.AA, may include:
- a) staff compensation and redundancy payments;
 - b) compensation payments in respect of broken contracts;
 - c) expenses of disposing of assets or adapting them for other purposes;
 - d) legal and other professional fees; and
 - e) dissolution expenses.
- 5.DD If this Agreement is terminated, and the Academy Trust owns capital assets which have been partly or wholly funded by HM Government, the Academy Trust must, as soon as possible after the termination date:
- a) transfer a proportion of those capital assets, equal to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government, to a

nominee of the Secretary of State to use for educational purposes; or

- b) if the Secretary of State directs that a transfer under clause 5.DD(a) is not required, pay to the Secretary of State at the termination date (or, by agreement with the Secretary of State, at the date of their subsequent disposal) a sum equivalent to the proportion of the original financial contribution made by HM Government.

5.EE The Secretary of State may:

- a) waive all or part of the repayment due under sub-clause 5.DD(b) if the Academy Trust obtains his permission to invest the sale proceeds for its charitable purposes; or
- b) direct the Academy Trust to pay all or part of the sale proceeds to the relevant LA.

6. OTHER CONTRACTUAL ARRANGEMENTS

Annexes

6.A Any annexes to this Agreement form part of and are incorporated into this Agreement.

The Master Agreement

6.B Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, all provisions of the Master Agreement have full force and effect.

General

6.C The Academy Trust cannot assign this Agreement.

6.D Failure to exercise, or a delay in exercising, any right or remedy of the Secretary of State under this Agreement (including the right to terminate this Agreement), or a single or partial exercise of such a right or remedy, is not a waiver of, and does not prevent or restrict any initial or further exercise of, that or any other right or remedy.

- 6.E Termination of this Agreement will not affect the accrued rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities of the parties existing at termination.
- 6.F This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which when executed and delivered shall constitute a duplicate original, but all of which will together constitute the same agreement.
- 6.G This Agreement and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with it or its subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales, and submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.
- 6.H Not used

Information Sharing with Local Authorities – Statutory Responsibilities

- 6.I The Academy Trust must provide:
- a) the name, address and date of birth of the pupil or student;
 - b) the name and address of a parent of the pupil or student;
 - c) information in the institution's possession about the pupil or student (except if the pupil or student concerned (in the case of a pupil or student who has attained the age of 16) or a parent of the pupil or student concerned (in the case of a pupil or student who has not attained the age of 16) has instructed the Academy Trust not to provide information of that kind);
- upon request under section 14 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 from a local authority (for the purpose of enabling or assisting it to exercise its functions under Part 1 of that Act); or
- upon request under section 72 of that Act from a body providing services under sections 68 or 70(1)(b) of the Act (for the purposes of providing such services).

This Agreement was executed as a Deed on
Executed on behalf of the **Academy Trust** by:

.....

Director

in the
presence of

.....

Witness

Name:

Address:

The Corporate Seal of

THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR EDUCATION

affixed to this deed is authenticated by:

.....

Duly Authorised

ANNEXES

Annex A

ADMISSION OF CHILDREN AND YOUNG PEOPLE WITH EDUCATION, HEALTH AND CARE PLANS

“**EHC Plan**” means an education, health and care plan made under section 37 of the Children and Families Act 2014.

The Children and Families Act 2014 imposes duties directly on Academies in respect of pupils with SEN, including the admission of pupils with EHC plans. If an Academy Trust considers that a LA should not have named the Academy in an EHC plan, it may ask the Secretary of State to determine whether the LA has acted unreasonably, and to make an order directing the LA to reconsider. The Academy Trust must admit the pupil if such a determination is pending. The Secretary of State’s determination as to whether the LA acted unreasonably will be final, subject to any right of appeal which a pupil (who is over compulsory school age) or parent of the pupil may have to the First-tier Tribunal (Special Educational Needs and Disability) or the Upper Tribunal Administrative Appeals Chamber.



© Crown copyright 2020

You may re-use this document/publication (not including logos) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence v2.0. Where we have identified any third party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

To view this licence:

Visit: www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/2

email: psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

We welcome feedback. If you would like to make any comments about this publication, please email AFSPD.feedback@education.gov.uk, quoting the title of this document. Specific project queries should be sent to the allocated project lead/lead contact.

About this publication:

enquiries www.education.gov.uk/contactus

download www.gov.uk/government/publications

Reference: DfE-00214-2020



Follow us on Twitter:
[@educationgovuk](https://twitter.com/educationgovuk)



Like us on Facebook:
facebook.com/educationgovuk